

**BIRLA CENTRAL LIBRARY**

PILANI (Rajasthan)

Class No...730.9.

Book No...44235

Accession No...58745

*With the compliments  
of the  
Embassy -  
of the  
Federal Republic of Germany  
New Delhi*



# A SHORT HISTORY OF MUSIC



LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN

*From the painting by Ferdinand Schimon (1818-19)*

ALFRED EINSTEIN  
A SHORT HISTORY OF  
MUSIC

ILLUSTRATED EDITION

*with 4 colour plates and 220 monochrome illustrations*

*selected by*

A. HYATT KING



CASELL AND COMPANY LTD

LONDON

CASELL & CO. LTD  
37/38 ST. ANDREWS HILL, QUEEN VICTORIA STREET  
LONDON, E.C.4

AND AT

210 Queen Street, Melbourne  
26/30 Clarence Street, Sydney  
P.O. Box 9, Lower Hutt, N.Z.  
263/7 Adelaide Street West, Toronto  
P.O. Box 275, Cape Town  
P.O. Box 1386, Salisbury, S. Rhodesia  
122 East 55th Street, New York, 22  
15 Graham Road, Ballard Estate, Bombay, 1  
Islands Brygge 5, Copenhagen  
Gartenstrasse 53, Düsseldorf  
Avenida 9 de Julho 1138, São Paulo  
P.O. Box 959, Accra, Gold Coast  
Galeria Güemes, Escritorio 518/520, Florida  
165 Buenos Aires  
Calcada Do Cormo 55-20, Lisbon  
25 Rue Henri Barbusse, Paris 5c

*First published 1936*  
*This illustrated edition, 1953*

SET IN 12 PT BEMBO TYPE AND  
PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY  
W. S. COWELL LTD  
IPSWICH AND LONDON  
P. 552

# CONTENTS



	PAGE
AUTHOR'S PREFACE	vi
ILLUSTRATOR'S PREFACE	vii
ALFRED EINSTEIN, 1880-1952	viii
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	x
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	xi
PRIMITIVE MUSIC	I
THE ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS	4
THE MIDDLE AGES	
THE GREGORIAN CHANT	11
POLYPHONY	19
THE RENAISSANCE	
NEW FORMS	43
ACCOMPANIED MONODY	64
INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY	84
PROTESTANT CHURCH MUSIC	98
BACH	104
HANDEL	108
MODERN TIMES	
HOMOPHONY	113
MODERN INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC	117
HAYDN	125
MOZART	130
BEETHOVEN	144
THE ROMANTIC AGE	150
ROMANTIC OPERA	164
OPERA IN THE LATIN COUNTRIES	168
THE NEW ROMANTICISM	173
WAGNER	184
BRAHMS, BRUCKNER AND FRANCK	192
NATIONAL MUSIC	196
YESTERDAY AND TO-DAY	202
INDEX	211



## AUTHOR'S PREFACE

THIS concise History of Music was first produced more than twenty years ago. It was written in a few weeks, at a time and place that precluded resort to any books of reference. Lists of names and dates, however, were not my object; my desire was to present a picture of the development of music as a whole, the historical form of that development and the figures of a few of the great masters. The reader will, I venture to hope, appreciate a certain unity in this presentation, which a mass of details would have destroyed.

The work was originally one of a popular educational series, and as such its scope was very limited. But it never really fitted its frame, for it is not exactly an educational book. It is addressed rather to the reader who has already made himself acquainted with some of the facts of musical history and has heard pre-classical, classical, romantic and modern music performed—heard it attentively. Of what value to a reader is a history of music unless music is part of his experience? And music of the present as well as of the past. The music of the present explains that of the past, and not the other way round. Of what use to a blind man is a history of art?

The present English version differs to some extent—especially in the earlier part of the book—from the last German edition. My account of medieval music, formerly disproportionately meagre, has been expanded. Later sections have been modified here and there.

London, 1936

# PREFACE TO THIS ILLUSTRATED EDITION

It is much to be regretted that Dr Alfred Einstein died while this edition of his book was in the final stages of proof. The task of selecting the illustrations had been begun some years before, but production was held up by circumstances beyond the control of both the publisher and myself. However, when the selection was complete, all the photographs, with the proposed captions and descriptive details, were sent to Dr Einstein in America for his scrutiny and comment. He made a number of suggestions and changes which I was glad to adopt. The illustrations on pages 47, 56 (Sweelinck) and 120 (Pergolesi) were supplied by him. (He also made a few small changes in the text). Being fully aware how abstract in character was much of his text, and appreciating the consequent difficulty of finding exactly relevant illustrations, Dr Einstein was good enough to allow me a certain latitude both in their selection and arrangement. Thus, the chief responsibility for the character of this edition is my own.

Hampstead, 1952

A. HYATT KING

## NOTE ON THE TRANSLATION

The translation is the work of several hands. Of the collaborators undernamed some have contributed a few and others many pages. All have undertaken the task as a pleasure for the opportunity it afforded of paying their respects to the esteemed author.

ERIC BLOM

MARIANNE BROOKE

RICHARD CAPELL

H. C. and HESTER COLLES

EDWARD J. DENT

EDWIN EVANS

A. H. FOX STRANGWAYS

WILLIAM GLOCK

SCOTT GODDARD

P. HOPE-WALLACE

DYNELEY HUSSEY

ROBERT L. JACOBS

MARION M. SCOTT

J. A. WESTRUP

BERYL DE ZOETE

## ALFRED EINSTEIN

b. Munich, 30.xii.1880; d. El Cerrito, California, 13.ii.1952.

AFTER studying for the law, Einstein early decided to devote his life to musicology, and in 1903 took his doctorate with a thesis entitled *Zur deutschen Literatur für Viola da Gamba* (published 1905). This was the beginning of a long and very distinguished career, in which he made his name as critic, lexicographer, editor and author. From 1917 to 1927 he acted as music critic to the *Münchener Post*, from 1927 to 1933 to the *Berliner Tageblatt*. Besides producing in 1919, 1922 and 1929 the 9th, 10th and 11th editions of Riemann's *Musik-Lexikon*, Einstein translated, with additions, A. Eaglefield-Hull's *Dictionary of Modern Music and Musicians* as *Das neue Musik-Lexikon* (1926). His position as a musicologist was secured by his appointment in 1918 as editor of the *Zeitschrift für Musikwissenschaft*, which office he continued to hold until 1933. On leaving Germany in this year, he came to England.

In 1936 his *Geschichte der Musik*, first published in 1918, was issued in a translation made as a tribute by the English scholars and critics named on page vii. (This translation was reissued in 1948 with musical examples—largely reprinted from his admirable *Beispielsammlung zur älteren Musikgeschichte* that had appeared separately in 1917, and reached its fourth edition by 1930.) It is this book which is now presented in an illustrated edition. After residing in France and Italy, Einstein went to America in 1939, where he became naturalized in 1945, and held the chair of music at Smith College, Northampton, Mass., from 1939 until 1951.

Always an indefatigable worker, Einstein's output as editor and author was remarkable in view of his other activities. His editorial range, reflected most interestingly in the pages of the *Short History*, covered music by Antico, J. C. Bach, G. Benda, Corelli, G. Gabrieli, Gluck, F. J. Haydn, Marenzio, Mozart, Palestrina, Steffani and Vivaldi. Of these, perhaps the most outstanding were the selections from Steffani (1905); Gluck's opera 'L'Innocenza giustificata' (1937); Mozart's 'Don Giovanni' (1936) and 'Ten Celebrated String Quartets' (1945); the works of Marenzio (1929-31). A valuable collection of little known music appeared in 1924 under the title *Italienische Musiker und das Kaiserhaus, 1567-1625*.

Einstein's monumental revision of Köchel's thematic catalogue of Mozart (1937) contained so much additional material that it practically amounted to a new work. It was reissued in 1947 with a supplement. Of his books *The Italian Madrigal* (1949) was by far the most original and important, embodying in its three magisterial volumes the fruits of over forty years' scholarly research. Allowing for a difference in scale, it must be admitted that his other books were not all of the same quality. Those most likely to endure are *Gluck* (1936), *Mozart, his character, his work* (1946) and *Schubert* (1951). Einstein's other works included: 4 vol. of *Lebenslaufe deutscher Musiker, von ihnen selbst erzählt* (1915); a

ALFRED EINSTEIN

translation of B. Marcello's *Il Teatro alla moda* (1917); *Heinrich Schütz* (1928); *Briefe deutscher Musiker* (1939); *Greatness in Music* (1941); *Music in the Romantic Era* (1947). Besides writing numerous articles in periodicals, he contributed valuable essays to various 'Festschriften' published in honour of his friends and contemporaries, and to composite books such as Adler's *Handbuch der Musikgeschichte* (1924).

The fourfold nature of Einstein's work embodied all that was best in a period rich in eminent musicologists—breadth of mind, clarity of judgement, restraint in controversy, pungency untinged by malice, and profound, accurate scholarship unspoiled by arid pedantry.

A.H.K.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

THE illustrations on pages 55, 75 ('Orfeo'), 109, 117, 132, are reproduced by gracious permission of His late Majesty King George VI, from the Royal Music Library which is deposited on permanent loan in the British Museum.

Thanks are due to the Trustees of the British Museum for their permission to reproduce illustrations on the following pages: 5-10, 13-19, 21, 22, 26-30, 34, 35, 38, 41, 42, 44-46, 54, 56-69, 71, 74, 77-80, 83-86, 89-104, 106-8, 110-12, 114, 119-23, 126-9, 133, 135, 136, 138, 139, 141-4, 146, 147, 149, 152, 154, 155, 157, 159, 160, 162, 163, 165-71, 175-7, 181-3, 185, 186, 191-3, 196, 201, 203.

The Exclusive News Agency permitted reproduction of their copyright matter as follows: St. Francis, p. 25; Monteverdi, p. 75; Lulli, p. 79; Telemann, p. 90; Bach, p. 124; Cherubini, p. 166; Verdi, p. 172; Puccini, p. 173; Flotow, p. 176; Bruckner, p. 194; Tchaikovsky, p. 199; Smetana and Dvořák, p. 204; Debussy and Scriabin, p. 205; Ravel, p. 207; Bartók, p. 208; Hindemith, p. 209.

Other acknowledgements for material drawn from various private and public collections are made in the preliminary descriptive list of illustrations.

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

## COLOUR PLATES

- LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN. Portrait, from the painting by Ferdinand Schimon (1818-19). *By courtesy of the Beethoven Haus, Bonn* *Frontispiece*
- J. S. BACH. Portrait, copied (c. 1800) from the painting of 1746 by E. G. Haussmann, now in the British Museum. *By courtesy of the late Mr Paul Hirsch* *facing page* 104
- G. F. HANDEL. Portrait from the painting by Thomas Hudson, 1735-6. *By courtesy of Sir Newman Flower* *facing page* 110
- WILLIAM HOGARTH. Painting of a scene from the 'Beggar's Opera', 1728. *By courtesy of the Director of the Tate Gallery* *facing page* 139

## HALF-TONE ILLUSTRATIONS

- |  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| PERSIAN MUSICIANS from a water clock illustrated in al-Jazari's Treatise on automata, thirteenth century A.D. <i>By courtesy of Boston Museum of Fine Arts</i>                                 | 2    |
| PAN TEACHING THE PAN PIPES TO OLYMPOS (or Daphnis). Roman copy of Greek sculpture (original of early second century B.C.), in the National Museum, Naples. <i>By courtesy of W. F. Mansell</i> | 3    |
| EGYPTIAN FEMALE MUSICIANS, c. 1420 B.C. From vol. I of N. de Garis Davies's 'The Tomb of Nakt at Thebes', 1917. <i>By courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York</i>                     | 4    |
| INDIAN MUSICIANS. Scene from the Amarāvati sculptures, second century A.D., in the British Museum  | 5    |
| DETAIL FROM A FIVE-STRINGED BIWA OF EIGHTH CENTURY A.D., from 'Shosoin Gomotsu Zuruku' in the Shosoin at Nara  | 6    |
| TWO MEDALLIONS, SHOWING ARAB MUSICIANS, from the Blacas Ewer of 1232 A.D., made by Shujā' ibn Man'a of Mosul, in the British Museum  | 7    |
| ORPHEUS PLAYING THE LYRE TO THE THRACIANS, from a red-figure kratēr, in Berlin, c. 450 B.C.  | 8    |
| AN AULOS PLAYER, WITH A DANCING GIRL, from the interior of a red-figure cylix, by Epictetus, c. 510 B.C.   | 9    |
| TERPSICHORE WITH MUSAEUS AND MELUSA, from a red-figure amphora, c. 450 B.C., by the Peleus-Painter, in the British Museum  | 10   |
| P.186 OF THE FARHI BIBLE, a Provençal MS. of 1382 A.D., showing the temple at Jerusalem and Jewish Instruments. <i>By courtesy of Mr David Sassoon</i>   | 12   |
| ST AMBROSE. Portrait, from mosaic in San Vittoreo, Ciel d'oro, Basilica Ambrosiana. <i>By courtesy of Biblioteca Ambrosiana and Arturo Faccioli, Milan</i>                                     | 12   |
| MOZARABIC CHANT, TENTH CENTURY, from B.M. Add. MS. 30845, fol. 13a   | 13   |
| AMBROSIAN CHANT, TWELFTH CENTURY, from B.M. Add. MS. 34209, fol. 51a   | 14   |

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
NOTKER, BALBULUS. From a miniature in the possession of the Antiquarischer Gesellschaft, Zürich, after the reproduction in its 'Mitteilungen', Bd. XIX. Hft. 4, 1877	15
BOETHIUS, DE MUSICA, early fourteenth century, from B.M. Burney MS. 275, fol. 359b	16
CHORAL NOTATION FROM FOURTEENTH CENTURY ANTIPHONAL. B.M. Add. MS. 12194, fol. 70b	17
GUIDO D'AREZZO DEMONSTRATING THE MONOCHORD TO THEODALDUS, BISHOP OF AREZZO, from a miniature in Codex 51, fol. 35b, twelfth century, in the National Library, Vienna	18
THE GUIDONIAN HAND, from Angelo de Picitono's 'Fior angelico di musica', Venice, 1547, sig. c ii recto	19
A CRWTH AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS FROM AN ELEVENTH-CENTURY ANGLO-SAXON PSALTER (Ff. I. 23) in University Library, Cambridge. <i>By courtesy of the Syndics</i>	20
SUMER IS I-CUMEN IN. B.M. Harl. MS. 978, fol. 11b	21
AN ENGLISH GYMEL, THIRTEENTH CENTURY, from B.M. Arundel MS. 248, fol. 155a	22
A WINCHESTER TROPER, from MS. 473, fol. 122b, in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. <i>By courtesy of the Master and Fellows</i>	23
ST FRANCIS OF ASSISI. Portrait, from the fresco in the Lower Church of San Francesco at Assisi	25
THE JENA MANUSCRIPT, c. 1490, fol. 1a	26
A TROUBADOUR SONG, from B.M. Egerton MS. 274, fol. 28b, 29a	27
WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE. Portrait, from the Manesse Codex, fol. 124, c. 1300, in the University Library, Heidelberg	28
OSWALD VON WOLKENSTEIN. Portrait from a MS. of his songs in the University Library, Innsbruck	28
HANS SACHS. Portrait, from the title-page of 'Das vierdt poetisch Buch' of his works, Nuremberg, 1578	29
ADAM DE LA HALLE. Portrait, from the 'Chansonnier d'Arras', c. 1270, fol. 133b	30
AMOUR PRESENTING DOUX PENSER, PLAISANCE AND ESPERENCE TO MACHAUT, from MS. France, 1584. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris</i>	31
FRANCESCO LANDINO. Portrait, from his gravestone in Basilica di S. Lorenzo in Florence. <i>By courtesy of Alinari, Rome</i>	33
SQUARCIALUPI CODEX, THIRTEENTH CENTURY, in the Biblioteca Laurenziana, Florence	34
ENGLISH PASSION MUSIC, c. 1450, from B.M. Egerton MS. 3307, fol. 20b	35
DUFAY AND BINCHOIS. Portraits, from the miniature in 'Le Champion des Dames'. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris</i>	37
JOHANNES TINCTORIS, 'Terminorum musicae diffinitorium', sig b ii. recto, Treviso, c. 1498	38
THE 'OLD HALL' MANUSCRIPT, c. 1480, fol. 62b. <i>By courtesy of St Edmund's College, Old Hall, nr. Ware, Herts.</i>	39

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
JEAN DE OCKEGHEM CONDUCTING A CHOIR, from MS. Franc. 1537, c. 1530, fol. 58b. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris</i>	40
JOSQUIN DES PRÉS. Portrait, from P. Opmeer's 'Opus Chronographicum', Antwerp, 1611, p. 440, after the portrait formerly in the Church of St Gudule, Brussels	41
HEINRICH ISAAK. Mass, 'Charge de deul', sig. <b>CcC</b> li verso, printed by Petrucci, Venice, 1506	42
ADRIAN WILLAERT. Portrait, from the woodcut portrait in his 'Musica nova', Venice, 1559	44
ADRIAN WILLAERT. 'Musica nova', Venice, 1559. Title-page of altus part	45
CIPRIANO DE RORE AND JACHET OF MANTUA. 'Sacri et santi salmi'. Venice, 1554. Title-page of tenor part	46
CIPRIANO DE RORE. Portrait, from the painting by Hans Muelich in the Staatsbibliothek, Munich	47
PRINCE CARLO GESUALDO. 'Madrigali a cinque voci'. Genoa, 1613. Half-title	48
ORLANDO LASSUS. 'Fasciculi aliquot sacrarum cantionum', Nuremberg, 1582. Title-page of quinta vox	49
G. P. DA PALESTRINA. 'Missarum liber primus'. Rome, 1554. Woodcut title-page with portrait	50
ORLANDO LASSUS. Portrait, 1580, from the painting by Johann von Achen in the Erziehungsinstitut Albertinum, Munich	51
GIOVANNI GABRIELI. 'Symphoniæ sacræ', Venice, 1615. Title-page of nonus part	52
ORLANDO LASSUS. 'Patrocinium Musices', Munich, 1575. Title-page of quarta pars	53
A LUTE. From the title-page of G. L. Fahrmann's 'Testudo Gallo-Germanica'. Nuremberg, 1615	54
PARTHENIA. London, c. 1611. Engraved title-page of first edition	55
GERMAN CHURCH MUSIC AND ORGAN PLAYING. Arnolt Schlick. 'Spiegel der Orgelmacher und Organisten'. Mainz, 1511. Woodcut title-page	56
J. P. SWEELINCK. Portrait, from a painting in the Darmstadt Gallery	56
THOMAS TALLIS AND WILLIAM BYRD. Portraits, engraved c. 1730, by G. van der Gucht, after the drawings by N. Haym	57
WILLIAM BYRD. 'Psalmes, Songs and Sonnets'. London, 1611. First edition. Title-page of cantus secundus part	58
THOMAS MORLEY, <i>ed.</i> 'Triumphes of Oriana'. London, 1601. First edition. Title-page of altus part	58
ORLANDO GIBBONS. Portrait, from the painting in the Music School, Oxford. <i>By courtesy of the Director</i>	59
JOHN DOWLAND. Autograph signature and music, from the 'Album Amicorum' of Johann Cellarius of Nuremberg, B.M. Add. MS. 27579, fol. 88a	59
THOMAS MORLEY. 'Fyer, fyer', from his 'First booke of Balletts'. London, 1600. First edition, bassus part	60



LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
THOMAS TOMKINS. Autograph of a pavan for organ or virginals. 1647. B.M. Add. MS. 29996, fol. 217b	60
ORAZIO VECCHI. 'Il Amfiparnasso', Venice, 1597. First edition. Woodcut illustration on sig. F iii verso	61
G. G. GASTOLDI. 'Italiaansche Balletten', Amsterdam, 1657. Title-page of cantus part	62
HANS LEO HASSLER. Portrait, from the engraving by Domen	62
HERMANN FINCK. 'Practica musica', Wittemberg, 1556. First edition. Woodcut from title-page	63
MARTIN LUTHER. Woodcut portrait by Lucas Cranach II	63
GEORG RHAW. 'Neuwe deudsche geistliche Gesenge', Wittemberg, 1544. First edition. Woodcut title-page of descantus part	64
MARTIN LUTHER. 'Deudsche Messe', Wittemberg, 1526. Woodcut title-page, attributed to Hans Cranach	65
SAMUEL SCHEIDT. Woodcut portrait from his 'Tabulatura nova', Hamburg, 1624	65
ITALIAN STAGE SCENE. Drawn by G. F. Grimaldi, engraved by G. B. Galestruzzi. From M. Marazzoli's 'La Vita Humana', Rome, 1657	66
GIULIO CACCINI. 'Le Nuove musiche'. Venice, 1602. Title-page of second edition	67
OTTAVIO RINUCCINI. 'La Dafne'. (Libretto to Peri's 'Dafne'.) Florence, 1600. Title-page of first edition	67
GIOSEFFO ZARLINO. 'Le Istitutioni harmoniche'. Venice, 1558. Title-page of first edition	68
LUCA MARENZIO. 'Il Primo libro de' madrigali'. Venice, 1600. Title-page of bassus part of second edition	69
GIOVANNI BOCCACCIO. 'Il Decamerone'. Venice, 1498. Woodcut title-page, with musicians	71
ALESSANDRO SCARLATTI. Portrait. <i>By courtesy of Biblioteca universitaria, Bologna</i>	72
J. A. HASSE. Engraving by L. Zucchi from the painting by P. Rotari. <i>By courtesy of Charles Hasse, Esq.</i>	73
'THE POCKET COMPANION FOR GENTLEMEN AND LADIES', London. c. 1725. Engraved frontispiece, showing performance of opera songs	74
CLAUDIO MONTEVERDI. 'Orfeo', Venice, 1615. Title-page of second edition	75
CLAUDIO MONTEVERDI. Portrait, from Marinoni's 'Fiori poetiche nel funerale di Monteverdi', Venice, 1644	75
ALESSANDRO SCARLATTI. 'Griselda', 1721. Autograph of the end of Act I, scene 5. B.M. Add. MS. 14168, fol. 84b	77
J. B. LULLI. 'Roland'. Paris, 1709. Second edition, p. 72	78
HENRY PURCELL. Portrait, aged twenty-four, from the engraving after the painting by R. White, in his 'Sonatas of III parts', 1683	79
J. B. LULLI. Portrait, from an engraving by Edelinck	79

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
HENRY PURCELL. 'Fantasia on one note', c. 1680. Autograph. B.M. Add. MS. 30930, ff. 35, 36	80
HEINRICH ALBERT. 'Arien', Königsberg, 1650. Title-page of first edition, part 8	83
GIROLAMO FRESCOBALDI. 'Toccate d'intavolatura'. Rome, 1637. Title-page of first edition	84
GIROLAMO FRESCOBALDI. Engraved portrait from his 'Toccate d'intavolatura di Cimbalo'. Rome, 1637	85
CONCERTO PERFORMANCE OF THE EARLY EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. From 'The Modern Music Master'. London, 1731	86
GIUSEPPE TARTINI. Portrait, from an engraving by C. Calcinoto. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliotecaria universitaria, Bologna</i>	87
TOMMASO VITALI. Portrait. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliotecaria universitaria, Bologna</i>	88
J. B. LULLI. 'Le Triomphe de l'amour'. Paris, 1681. Title-page of first edition	89
G. P. TELEMANN. Mezzotint portrait, by D. Preisler, after the painting by L. M. Schneider	90
J. B. DE LABORDE. 'Choix de chansons'. Paris, 1774. Vol. 2, p. 68, showing ball-room scene	91
CHRISTOPHER SIMPSON. 'The Division Violist'. London, 1659. P. 3	92
FRANCESCO VERACINI. 'Sonate à tre'. Op. 1. Dresden, 1721. Second, illustrated title-page	92
ARCHANGELO CORELLI. 'Sonate à tre'. Op. 3. Rome, 1689. Title-page of first edition, by N. Dorigny	93
FRANCESCO VERACINI. Engraved portrait by J. June, after the painting by F. F. Richter, from his 'Sonate accademiche'. Op. 2. London, 1744	93
E. F. DALL' ABACO. 'Concerti à più Instrumenti'. Amsterdam. Op. 5. 1717. Title-page of first edition	94
ARCHANGELO CORELLI. Portrait, by Hugh Howard, c. 1700. <i>By courtesy of the Director, Royal College of Music</i>	94
JOHN PLAYFORD. 'Musicks Handmaid'. London, 1678. Title-page, engraved by G. Vaughan, showing the virginals	95
G. B. VIOTTI. Portrait, from the title-page of his 'Three celebrated violin Solos'. London. c. 1815. (Originally engraved by G. A. Lehmann for the Hamburg edition)	96
ANTONIO VIVALDI. Caricature by Pierleone Ghezzi, from Codex Vat. Ottoboni 3114, fol. 26. <i>By courtesy of the Vatican Library</i>	96
'CHAMBER MUSIC'. Vignette from William Babell's 'XII Solos'. London, 1745	97
J. H. SCHEIN. 'Fontana d'Israel'. Leipzig, 1623. Woodcut title-page showing performance of church music	97
MICHAEL PRAETORIUS. 'Theatrum Instrumentorum'. Wolfenbüttel, 1620, containing the supplementary plates to his 'Syntagma musicum'. Title-page, showing the performance of a mass by a triple choir	98

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
J. H. SCHEIN. Portrait by an unknown painter in the University Library, Leipzig	99
HEINRICH SCHÜTZ. Portrait by Christoph Spetner in the University Library, Leipzig	100
'GEISTREICHES GESANGBUCH'. Dresden, 1676. Frontispiece showing H. Schütz conducting music in church	101
J. G. WALTER. 'Musikalisches Lexicon'. Leipzig, 1732. Frontispiece, showing performance of a church cantata	102
JOHANNES PACHELBEL. 'Hexachordum Apollinis'. Nuremberg, 1699. Title-page of first edition, by C. N. Schurn	103
J. S. BACH. 'Clavierübung'. Nuremberg, 1735. Title-page of Tl. 2, first edition	104
FRANÇOIS COUPERIN. Portrait, engraved by Flippart, after the painting by André Bouys	106
J. S. BACH. 'Das wohltemperierte Clavier'. Book 2, 1744, autograph of prelude no. 15. B.M. Add. MS. 35021, fol. 11	107
G. F. HANDEL. 'Arie dell' Opera di Rinaldo'. London, 1711. Title-page of first edition	108
G. F. HANDEL. 'Messiah'. 1742. Last leaf of autograph. B.M. R.M. 20. f. 20. fol. 132b	109
ENGLISH PERFORMANCE OF ORATORIO. From a print in the British Museum. c. 1735. It is generally described, though without good authority, as being conducted by Handel	110
PERFORMANCE OF HANDEL'S MESSIAH. From Charles Burney's 'Account of the Musical Performance in Westminster Abbey'. London, 1784	111
PERFORMANCE OF A CHORAL. Line engraving, by J. R. Holzhalb in the 'Neu Jahrs Geschenke' of the 'Zürich Musikgesellschaft' for 1769	112
J. J. ROUSSEAU. Portrait, from the painting by Alan Ramsay in the National Gallery of Scotland. <i>By courtesy of the Trustees</i>	114
PIETRO METASTASIO. Portrait engraved after the painting by J. Steiner, from Charles Burney's 'Memoirs of the Life . . . of the Abate Metastasio', 1796	114
C. W. VON GLUCK. Portrait, from the painting by Greuze. <i>By courtesy of the Louvre</i>	115
C. W. VON GLUCK. 'Orfeo ed Euridice'. Paris, 1764. Frontispiece, by C. Monnet	117
J. B. DE LABORDE. 'Choix de chansons'. Paris, 1774. Vol. 2, p. 118, shewing chamber music	119
G. B. PERGOLESI. Portrait, from the caricature by Pierleone Ghezzi	120
G. B. SAMMARTINI. Portrait, from an anonymous painting. <i>By courtesy of the Biblioteca Universitaria, Bologna</i>	120
JOHANN STAMITZ. Portrait, from engraving on title-page of J. B. Cartier's 'Art du Violon'. Paris, 1798	121
'LE CONCERT'. An engraving by Auguste de St. Aubin, c. 1770	122
C. F. HENRICI. 'Ernst-scherzhafte Gedichte'. Leipzig, 1727. Engraving of serenade in vol. 1	123

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
DOMENICO SCARLATTI. Portrait, from an engraving in the Royal College of Music. <i>By courtesy of the Director</i>	124
C. P. E. BACH. Portrait, from the engraving by A. Stöttrup	124
F. J. HAYDN. Portrait, engraved by Thomas Hardy, from his own painting, c. 1795	126
F. J. HAYDN. 'Six Quatuor', Oeuvre IX (= Op. 17). Amsterdam, c. 1772. Title-page of first edition	127
F. J. HAYDN. 'Drum-roll' symphony, 1795. Autograph of last leaf. B.M. Add. MS. 31707, fol. 39a	128
F. J. HAYDN. 'La creation du monde'. Paris, 1801. Frontispiece, engraved by Choffard, after Raphael	129
C. F. ABEL. Portrait from the painting by Gainsborough, 1777. <i>By courtesy of the Henry E. Huntington Library and Art Gallery, Sa: Marino, California</i>	131
J. SCHOBERT. 'Concerto pour le clavecin'. Amsterdam, c. 1765. Title-page of first edition	132
W. A. MOZART. Portrait from an engraving of 1793 by A. Kohl, after the wax relief by L. Posch (1789)	133
W. A. MOZART. 'La Clemenza di Tito'. Hamburg, c. 1795. Title-page of first edition of vocal score	135
LEOPOLD MOZART. Portrait, from his 'Versuch einer gründlicher Violinschule', Augsburg, 1756, engraved by J. A. Friedrich from the drawing by G. Eichler	136
LORENZO DA PONTE. Portrait, from the painting by Samuel F. Morse. <i>By courtesy of J. B. Lippincott Co.</i>	137
A. E. M. GRÉTRY. Portrait from the painting by Elisabeth Vigée le Brun in Musée de Versailles. <i>By courtesy of the Curator</i>	137
W. A. MOZART. 'Die Zauberflöte'. An early vocal score. Vienna, c. 1810. Title-page	138
W. A. MOZART. 'Six sonates pour le clavecin avec l'accompagnement d'un violon'. Vienna, 1781. (K. 376, 296, 377-380). Title-page of first edition	139
J. C. BACH. Portrait from the painting by Gainsborough, c. 1775. <i>By courtesy of Biblioteca Universitaria, Bologna</i>	140
W. A. MOZART. String quartet in A, K.464, 1785. Autograph of part of the 4th movement. B.M. Add. MS. 37763, fol. 54b	141
LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN. 'Drei Sonaten fürs Clavier' (Op. 161, Grove). Spire, 1783, Title-page of first edition	142
LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN. Violin Sonata in G. Op. 30, no. 3, 1802. Autograph draft. B.M. Add. MS. 37767, fol. 9b	143
MUZIO CLEMENTI. Portrait, engraved by Thomas Hardy, after his own painting	144
LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN. The prison scene from 'Fidelio'. From an engraving by V. R. Grüner, c. 1820. <i>By courtesy of the Österreichische Nationalbibliothek</i>	145
LUDWIG VAN BEETHOVEN. Fifth Symphony. Score. Leipzig, 1826. Title-page of first edition	146

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
J. F. LESUEUR. 'La Caverne'. Paris, 1793. Title-page of first edition	147
C. M. VON WEBER. Trio for flute, piano and violoncello. Op. 63. 1819. Autograph of last leaf. B.M. Egerton MS. 2791, fol. 11b	149
FRANZ SCHUBERT. Portrait. From the water-colour by W. A. Rieder, 1825	151
FRANZ SCHUBERT. Autograph of Piano Sonata in G, op. 78, 1826. First leaf of andante, showing cancelled first draft. B.M. Add. MS. 36738, fol. 6b and 7a	152
FRANZ SCHUBERT. 'Der Erl König'. Third copy of original autograph, made by Schubert for Goethe, 1816	153
FRANZ SCHUBERT. 'Die schöne Müllerin'. Vienna, c.1830. Title-page of an early edition	154
CARL LOEWE. Portrait, after the drawing by Hans Fechner	155
G. A. BURGER. 'Lenore'. Title-page by Chodowiecki, of 4th edition of the setting by J. A. André. (From the illustrator's collection)	156
FELIX MENDELSSOHN-BARTHOLDY. String Quartet in E flat, 1823. Autograph of the end of the first and beginning of the second movement. B.M. Add. MS. 30900, fol. 49	157
FELIX MENDELSSOHN-BARTHOLDY. Portrait, from the drawing by H. Mücke, 1835. <i>By courtesy of Dr Paul Mendelssohn-Bartholdy</i>	158
FELIX MENDELSSOHN-BARTHOLDY. 'Elias. Ein Oratorium'. Leipzig, 1847. Lithographed title-page, drawn by Julius Hübner, from the first edition of the score	159
E. T. A. HOFFMANN. Portrait, drawn by Hensel	160
ROBERT SCHUMANN. 'Waldscenen'. Leipzig, 1850. Lithographed title-page of first edition, drawn by Krätzschmer. (From the illustrator's collection)	161
ROBERT SCHUMANN. Portrait, drawn by E. Bendemann	162
ROBERT SCHUMANN. Piano Sonata in F minor. Op. 14. 1836. Autograph of last leaf. B.M. Add. MS. 37056, fol. 25a	163
C. M. VON WEBER. 'Der Freischütz'. Vocal score. London, c. 1827. Lithographed title-page of first English edition	165
LOUIS SPOHR. Portrait, after the lithograph by Jentzen	166
LUIGI CHERUBINI. Portrait, from the painting by Ingres in the Louvre	166
C. M. VON WEBER. Portrait, from the painting by Schimon	167
G. A. ROSSINI. Portrait, after the lithograph by Grévédon, 1828	168
F. A. BOIELDIEU. Portrait, after the lithograph by Grévédon	169
VINCENZO BELLINI. Portrait, lithographed after the drawing by A. Focosi	169
GIACOMO MEYERBEER. Portrait, from a photograph. <i>By courtesy of Mr Desmond Flower</i>	170
D. F. E. AUBER. Portrait, after the lithograph by Desmason, 1865	170
G. A. ROSSINI. 'Stabat Mater'. 1832-41. First leaf of the autograph score. B.M. Add. MS. 43970, fol. 1a	171

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
GIUSEPPE VERDI. Portrait, from the painting by Boldini, 1886	172
GEORGES BIZET. Portrait, from a photograph by Carjat	172
GIACOMO PUCCINI. Portrait, from a photograph	173
GEORGES BIZET. 'Carmen'. Poster for the production of 1875. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliothèque de l'opéra, Paris</i>	174
GIUSEPPE VERDI. 'Attila', 1846. Autograph score of part of the prologue. B.M. Add. MS. 35156, fol. 57a	175
G. A. LORTZING. Portrait, after the painting by W. Souchon, in the collection of the Tunnel-Gesellschaft, Leipzig	176
FRIEDRICH VON FLOTOW. Portrait, from a photograph	176
HEINRICH MARSCHNER. Portrait, from a lithograph by Gauci after the painting by F. A. Jung	177
HECTOR BERLIOZ. Portrait, from a lithograph by Krichuber, 1845. <i>By courtesy of Mr Cecil Hopkinson</i>	178
HECTOR BERLIOZ. 'Grande messe des morts'. Full score of second edition, Milan, 1853. The 'Tuba mirum' with the composer's autograph corrections for a later edition. <i>By courtesy of Mr Cecil Hopkinson</i>	179
FRANZ LISZT. A caricature by Yves and Barret from 'La Vie Parisienne', 3 April, 1886	181
FRANZ LISZT. Fantasia on 'Simone Boccanegra', 1882. Autograph of last leaf. B.M. Egerton MS. 2735, fol. 26b	182
RICHARD WAGNER. Portrait, from the cartoon by 'Spy', 1887	183
NICCOLÒ PAGANINI. Portrait, from the water-colour drawing by D. Maclise, showing his London début at the Opera House, June 1831. <i>By courtesy of The Director, Victoria and Albert Museum</i>	183
GIACOMO MEYERBEER. 'Les Huguenots', 1836. Stage setting for Act 5, scene 1. <i>By courtesy of the Bibliothèque de l'opéra, Paris</i>	184
RICHARD WAGNER. 'Tannhäuser'. Setting of Act 1, scene 2, from the Paris production. Woodcut from 'L'Illustration', 1861	185
RICHARD WAGNER. Rienzi. Vocal score, Dresden, c. 1870. Title-page of second edition	186
RICHARD WAGNER. 'Die Meistersinger', 1867. Autograph of Hans Sachs's Monologue. <i>By courtesy of the Wagner-Museum, Triebtschen</i>	189
JOHANNES BRAHMS. Portrait, from a photograph taken c. 1890	191
JOHANNES BRAHMS. 'Vier Lieder', op. 96, Berlin, 1886. Title-page of first edition, drawn by Max Klinger	192
HUGO WOLF. From a photograph, c. 1893. <i>By courtesy of Mr Frank Walker</i>	192
JOHANNES BRAHMS. Rhapsody in E flat. Op. 119, no. 2, 1892. Autograph of first leaf. B.M. Add. MS. 41866, fol. 1a	193

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
ANTON BRUCKNER. Portrait, from a photograph	195
FRYDERYK CHOPIN. <i>P</i> olonaise in A major. Op. 40, no. 1, 1838. Autograph of first leaf. B.M. Egerton MS. 3040, fol. 2a	196
EDVARD GRIEG. Portrait, from a drawing by E. Wesenskiold. <i>By courtesy of the Bergen Museum</i>	197
JAN SIBELIUS. 'Rakastava', 1911. Autograph of opening of the 'Lento'. <i>By courtesy of Otava Publishing Co., Helsinki</i>	198
SIR EDWARD ELGAR. 'Introduction and Allegro' for Strings. Op. 47, 1905. Autograph of last leaf. <i>By courtesy of Mrs C. Elgar Blake</i>	198
JAN SIBELIUS. Portrait, from a photograph by Otava Publishing Co., Helsinki	199
P. I. TCHAIKOVSKY. Portrait, from a photograph	199
FRYDERYK CHOPIN. Portrait, from the painting by Delacroix. <i>By courtesy of the Louvre</i>	200
ANTONÍN DVOŘÁK. Violoncello Concerto in A, 1865. Autograph of last leaf of piano score. B.M. Add. MS. 42050, fol. 61b	201
SIR EDGAR ELGAR. Portrait from the drawing by Sir William Rothenstein. <i>By courtesy of the City of Birmingham Art Gallery</i>	203
RICHARD STRAUSS. Portrait, from the drawing by Leonhard Fanto	203
BEDŘICH SMETANA. Portrait, from a photograph	204
ANTONÍN DVOŘÁK. Portrait, from a photograph	204
ALEXANDER SCRIBIN. Portrait, from a photograph	205
CLAUDE DEBUSSY. Portrait, from the painting by Jacques Blanche	205
MODEST MUSSORGSKY. Portrait, from the painting by Ilya Repin, 1881. <i>By courtesy of 'Soviet Weekly'</i>	206
IGOR STRAVINSKY. Portrait, from the drawing by Picasso. <i>By courtesy of John Lehmann Ltd, and Ernest Ansermet</i>	207
MAURICE RAVEL. Portrait, from a photograph	207
BÉLA BARTÓK. Portrait, from a photograph	208
GUSTAV MAHLER. Portrait, from the bronze head by Rodin. <i>By courtesy of the Musée Rodin</i>	208
FERRUCCIO BUSONI. Portrait, from a photograph. <i>By courtesy of Messrs Elliott &amp; Fry</i>	209
PAUL HINDEMITH. Portrait, from a photograph	209

## PRIMITIVE MUSIC

THE first beginnings of music lie even deeper in historical obscurity than those of speech, the relics of which are very much older. The only means of throwing any light on the subject is afforded by the observation of musical development in children and the music of primitive peoples. To the man who in prehistoric times first perceived musical sound as it originated in the beating of a hollow object or by the swing and whirl of a staff, it was something incomprehensible and therefore mysterious and magical. The mere sound of percussion instruments excited him to the pitch of intoxication. From them he discovered the power of rhythm, which inflamed and ordered the ritual dance and also co-ordinated the movements of labour and, as if by magic, lightened the toil. At the same time man may have acquired practice in the use of notes of definite pitch for signals in war, since they differ markedly from the ill-defined tones of speech in virtue of their distinctness. From that he may soon have hit upon a preference for the most sonorous and 'easy' intervals, the fourth and fifth. To tone and rhythm was added primitive melody, in conjunction with more or less intelligible words, in the first place probably as a magic initiation-formula of priests in religious rites or in the song of a chorus-leader in dancing or at work. At the same

time individuals may have been stimulated to satisfy through musical sounds their emotional needs, pleasurable or the reverse. A characteristic of the conception of primitive music is monotony, the endless repetition of the same short melody, just as the alternation of solo and chorus, improvisation and a regular refrain are among the oldest ingredients of musical form.

Natural science has tried to discover a pre-human origin for music in the song of birds; and comparative musicology, which deals with the prehistoric development of music, has admitted that primitive man may have been attracted by bird-song in the first place and have continued to use it as a model for imitation. What is certain is that the practice of music among primitive peoples shows a continual movement between two opposite extremes, excitement and repose; its typical form is therefore melody that begins on a high note and then sinks or falls to a definite final or tonic. Attempts have been made to determine the period at which such melodies originated on the basis of the range of their musical material—a limited range suggesting an early date, and so on—but without any certainty. Solo and choral song may have existed side by side from the very beginning. Whereas, however, solo song is prepared to take almost any liberties, and follows the dictates of freedom





*Persian Musicians, thirteenth century A.D.*

—freedom, not mere caprice or absence of rhythm—combined choral singing, whether at work or dancing, presupposes rhythmic unity; and this contrast is found even in primitive music. The combined singing of men and women and the simultaneous sound of voice and some such instrument as the pan-pipes may often have produced at quite an early date a kind of rude, unintentional polyphony—or rather heterophony, *i.e.* arbitrary ornamentation of the same melody by several performers at the same time—and a combination of several rhythms.

PRIMITIVE MUSIC



*Pan teaching the pan-pipes to Olympos (or Daphnis)*

## THE ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS

IT is characteristic of primitive melody that the intervals are few, small and, especially, indefinable and variable. The music of early civilizations is differentiated from the music of Nature by the recognition of the octave and all that it involves; by the impulse to tackle theoretically the problem of finding points of emphasis in the tones and semitones into which they divided the scale and, in particular, in its two complements, the fourth and the fifth; and by the consolidation of melody. The pentatonic scale stands as a token of an early stage of this endeavour. This scale is

limited to five degrees of the octave and the less easily compassed semitones are avoided, much as a child avoids and replaces by easier ones the difficult sounds of a language. To this fanciful or expressive use of tones and scales was added actual mathematical measurement, which led to the discovery—beyond the natural divisions of the octave—of mechanical and artificial divisions. These strange, queer systems stand to the natural scales less as rudiments than as degenerations consecrated by convention; and on them were built most refined types of melody which leave us with the impression of an art at once immature and overripe.

The pentatonic or more accurately the non-semitonal scale may be accepted as the rudimentary basis of every other tonal system throughout Europe and Asia, and it is recognizable in all the records we possess of primitive music. Of music in ancient Egypt we know too little, in spite of an abundance of pictorial illustrations, to be able to say definitely whether it was adopted in this ancient cradle of culture at the meeting-place of three continents. But in China the development from the non-semitonal to the seven-note scale is certainly traceable, even though the old pentatonic always remained the foundation of its music. In Japan, beside the original scale we have a series of peculiar pentatonic scales, in



*Egyptian female musicians playing double flute, harp and lute, 1500-1350 B.C.*

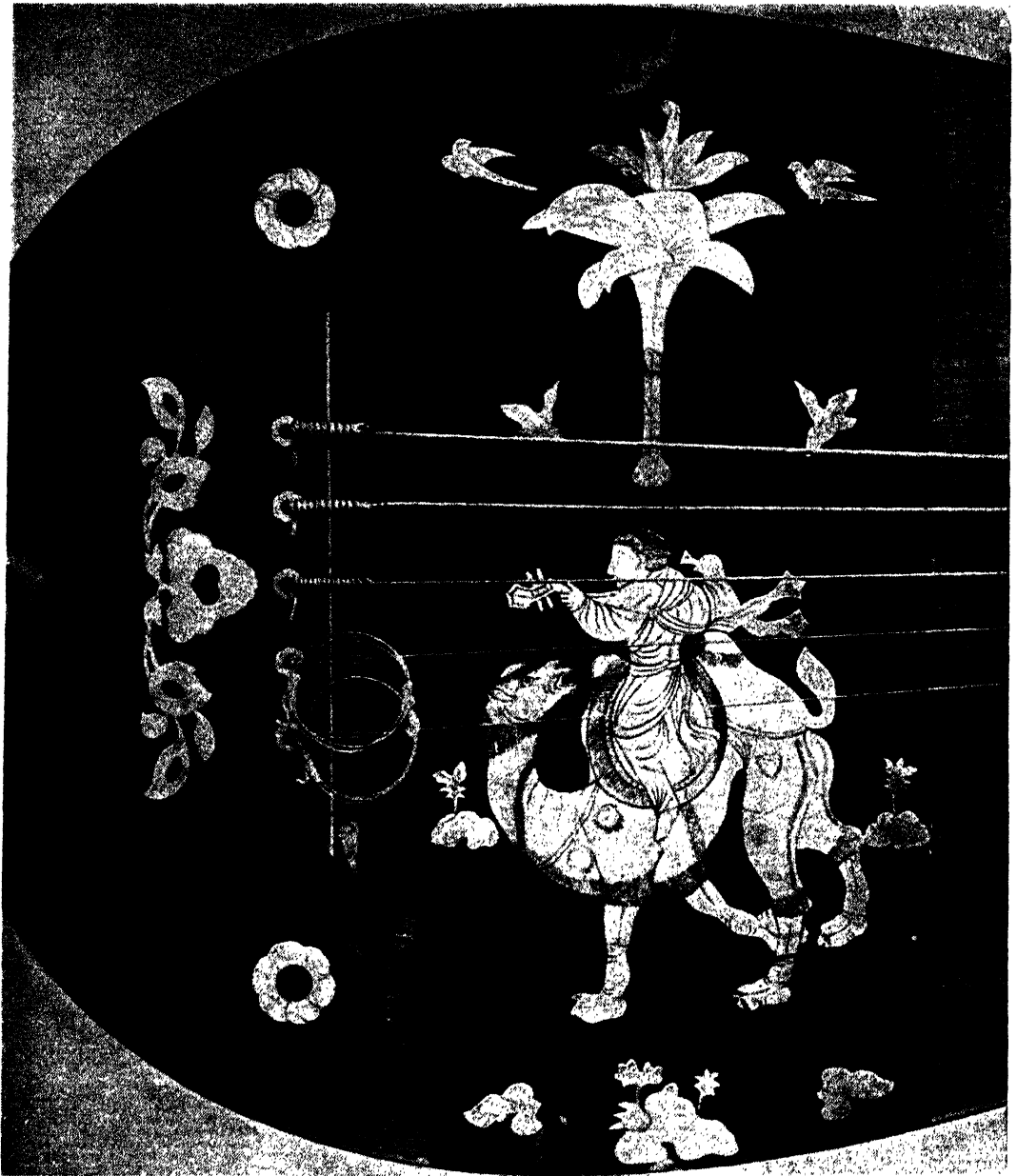


*Musicians at an Indian Festival, second century A.D.*

which semitones are employed. In Java, the octave is divided into five, or seven, equal degrees, which have no relation to the intervals that we regard as natural.

The musical culture of the Near East is quite different from what may be called in a particular sense 'Oriental', that of India and Arabia and Persia. In India, the normal seven-note octave is the basis of all melody;

but it becomes transformed and overgrown by a whole host of minute intervals employed for the sake of ornament. The Arabic-Persian system is even further removed from ours; it is built up of small units of a third of a tone—originally seventeen and later twenty-four to the octave—and shows the influence of Greek musical theory. Both these peoples have in common a natural



*Part of a five-stringed biwa of eighth century A.D.*

disposition for making music, which is partly mystical and partly emotional. Both distinguish between solemn, religious music, which admits the greatest variety in the structure of rhythm and melodies and is frequently independent of speech-rhythm, and music of the folk, in which melodic restraint is often carried to the point of

rigidity and the symmetrical grouping of the smallest melodic units or motives is popular. Both, also, have astonishingly elaborate instrumental resources, from percussion instruments handled with great virtuosity to every kind of wind and string instrument, plucked and bowed. To Arabian music Europe owes the lute and the violin.

The ancient civilization which has given us supreme examples of the plastic arts acted in music as a mediator in the most spiritual sense between the traditions of East and West. For the Greeks too music was, as its name implies, a divine discovery. The followers of Orpheus and of Pythagoras still saw in music a magical means of purification and of healing. But from the Greek musical practice of early times to an ideal conception of the art the way was astonishingly short. They came to regard it as a necessary element of education and general culture. They even held it to be one of the pillars of political morality, believing that

the State could no more than the individual dispense with right harmony and true rhythm. They placed music among the subjects in which open artistic competition was held during the ritual year at festivals, tribal or municipal; and besides these great occasions there were competitive games, above all the Pythian games at Delphi, that were specially devoted to music: to the lyric contests, which consisted of the poetical and musical inventions called 'nomoi'—the praises of the gods in the definite form of antiphonal melodic strophes, sonatas, as we might say, of pure melody; and, very early, to pure instrumental music. In 586 B.C., actually, the wind-player Sakadas took the prize with a programme-symphony on the 'aulos' (a reed instrument, not a flute) which, purported to represent the fight of the Pythian god with the dragon. But the highest form of this artistic competition was the drama, whose origin is to be sought in the Dithyramb, the choral dance in honour of Dionysus. In tragedy and comedy—the



*Arab Musicians, thirteenth century A.D.*



*Orpheus playing the lyre to the Thracians, c. 450 B.C.*

union of music, poetry and dance—the music took the form of solos for the actors and songs and dances for the chorus.

The Greeks recognized two sides to music—revelry, in the sense of elemental excitement, and spiritual uplift. They embodied these in the association and rivalry of music for the aulos, either independently or to give colour to choral song, and vocal music accompanied by the kithara. In the palmy days of tragedy accompanied by the aulos this rivalry was determined in favour of the instrument of revelry; and in this lay the inner meaning of Plato's ban on tragedy. The predominance of instrumental music, the neglect of speech, by which alone man could overmaster the dæmonic element imported by such music, the intrusion of the Eastern conception of

music as a merely sensual incitement, the dictatorship of popular taste and mere virtuosity—it was to all this that the philosophic writers ascribed the downfall of the ancient art. We cannot test this judgment of theirs; but it happens that the movement of that downfall coincided with the complete enunciation of the æsthetic of antiquity, with the systems of harmony, rhythm and acoustics which were to exert the greatest influence on posterity.

The 'chromatic' and 'enharmonic' of Greek music have nothing to do with the meanings we attach to those words nowadays, nor does their 'harmony' imply music in several parts or anything like modern polyphony. The mere facts that tone and word were inseparable and that the musician's time-unit depended on the poets'

prosody preclude any thought of ancient polyphony. Greek music was purely monodic. The accompaniment by their favourite kithara, and by the aulos too, did not amount to more than ornamentation of the vocal melody and connecting notes, and occasionally the playing of certain intervals. Greek 'harmony' is a doctrine of melody, of melody so fully and finely developed as to be a convincing refutation of any harmony in our sense. The basis of Greek melody is a scale-theory consisting of tetrachords differentiated by the position of the semitone. These, written in accordance with Greek feeling and theory in descending form, are: Dorian, A, G, F, E; Phrygian, A, G, F#, E; and Lydian, A, G#, F#, E. A further distinction of these elements was made by the three genera: diatonic, A, G, F, E; chromatic, A, F#, F, E; and enharmonic, A, F, F<, E. Melody so minutely developed as this, bound by fixed laws but susceptible of abundant modulation, *i.e.* combining the various modal species, implies in its hearers an exceptional sensibility for melodic and rhythmic detail; and this in its turn derives from a long and intricate symbolism of interval, with its roots deep in history—from the character (*ethos*) of the different octave-scales. This sensibility is suggested also by the fact that they were content with the few strings of the kithara, giving a compass of about eleven notes, and their weak-toned reed-instrument—a very different state of things from ours. The Greeks had no bowed string-instrument and despised the many-stringed harp of the Egyptians.

The most important of the Greek theor-

etical writers on music was the Peripatetic philosopher Aristoxenus of Tarentum (c. 320 B.C.), one of the advocates of the psychological study of music and an opponent of the speculative researches of the Pythagoreans, who were concerned with the science of acoustics. A compendium of classical theory was supplied by the Alexandrian writer Claudius Ptolemæus (second century A.D.); but the writers who actually passed on to the Middle Ages the Greek conception and doctrine of music were the late Roman 'philosophers' Boethius and Cassiodorus, both of whom belong to the sixth century A.D. In music, as in the other arts, the Romans were entirely unproductive and depended on the Greeks, whom they had made their subjects.

There have come down to us a few short melodies of Greek music and fragments of longer ones, though none of the virtuoso pieces in several sections; and these we can interpret, thanks to the notation being in



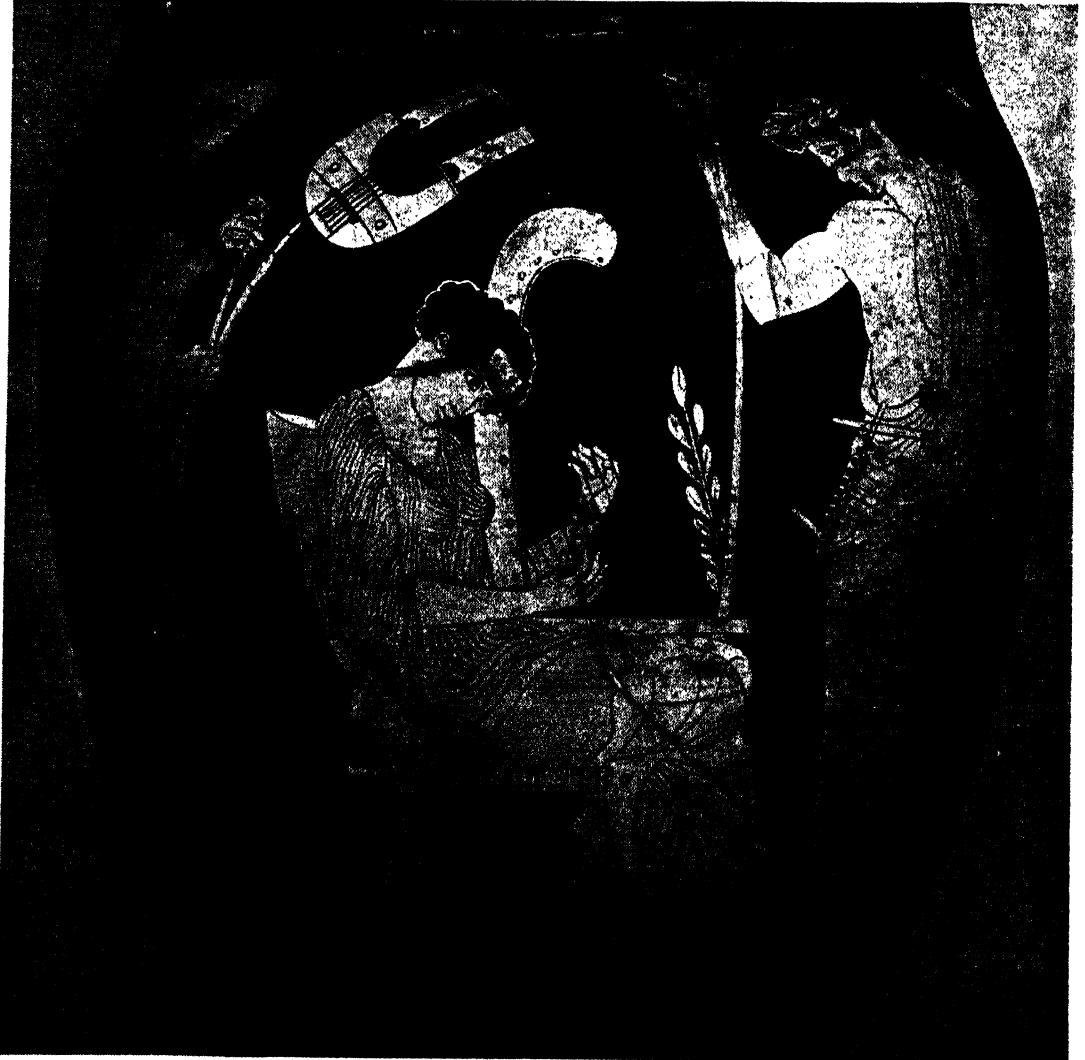
An aulos player, with a dancing girl, c. 510 B.C.



## A SHORT HISTORY OF MUSIC

two forms, vocal and instrumental. All these remnants show how difficult, how impossible it is for us to recover the expressive value of Greek music. The Middle Ages and subsequent times knew none of these discoveries or, if they did, could not decipher them. That was their good fortune. For the knowledge of the place music took as an ideal in Greek life, the marvel of this

highly-developed system, and the conclusion from these premises that their actual music was of a unique and exalted character—all this evaluation upon credit has, from the Middle Ages down to Richard Wagner, had the most fruitful consequences, by blazing up at important crises and stirring men's minds, and all the more since there were no concrete examples of the music.



*Terpsichore with Musaens and Melusa, c. 450 B.C.*

## CHAPTER III

# THE MIDDLE AGES

### THE GREGORIAN CHANT

THE Middle Ages are reckoned in general history to begin with the permanent establishment of a Germanic dominion at the centre of the Roman Empire. In the history of music the most characteristic feature of classical antiquity—monody—survived much longer. It can all the same be fully admitted that a new period of music began with the birth of Christendom. The Faith, or rather the Church, before whose expansive and conquering spiritual might Constantine bowed, while astutely making use of it for his own purposes, had from its inception allowed music an important place in its liturgical exercises; and just as it adopted for its use contemporary forms of the representative arts, so it made no difficulty in taking over the musical tradition inherited from the pre-Christian world. The source of Christian liturgical song is to be sought not at Rome but in the Eastern provinces of the Empire. Until the end of the third century Greek was the liturgical language of the new faith, and a relic of it survives in the Kyrie of the Roman Mass. The Christian ecclesiastical chant was first formulated at Jerusalem and in the Syrian and Alexandrine communities—particularly in monastic brotherhoods—and from the beginning Jewish and Greek influences were inextricably mingled. The

incentives from the East, transmitted and kept alive by Byzantium, remained more or less active even in later times. It was particularly strong in the eighth century under Popes of Syrian or Greek descent, and continued to bear fruit under the Carolingians in France and Alemania until brought to a close about 1050 by the Great Schism. Curiously enough, the Great Schism also marked the beginning of the lethargy and decadence of the vocal music of the Eastern Church, whereas the Western chant began only then to bear its choicest blooms and to progress towards the hitherto unimagined glories of polyphony.

The offices of the Hours are the most ancient portion of the Christian liturgy, the singing of the psalms having been adopted from the Jewish synagogue. The actual performance also corresponded to the Jewish practice of psalmody. It was at first responsorial, consisting, that is to say, of solo-singing by the Precentor answered by the choir (*Cantus responsorius*). After the middle of the fourth century antiphonal singing, which had originated in the Syrian monasteries, came into general use. As the name indicates, it consisted of the singing of two choirs in alternation. These were at first contrasted in pitch—one being composed of men, the other of women or boys—and

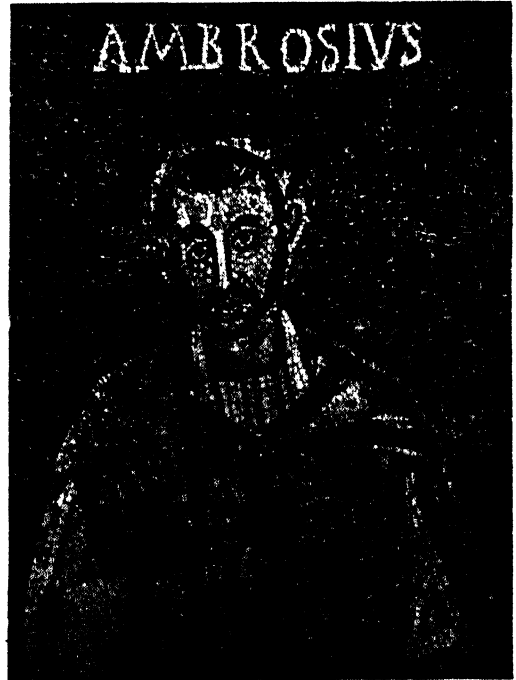


*The Temple at Jerusalem, with instruments,  
fourteenth century A.D.*

later were similar. Women seem to have ceased to take part from a comparatively early date (c. 578).

Like the antiphons and responds which were associated with psalm-singing, there are hymns of Hellenistic origin which also belong to the earliest corpus of Church music. And like the antiphons, the hymns too are said to have been transplanted from the East into the Western Church by St Ambrose, Bishop of Milan (d. 397), as representatives of a more popular mode of song, as the vehicles of a simpler melody. St Ambrose took an active part as poet in the making of these hymns. Like the hymns of the Syrian St Ephrem they are important because of the change that took place in them from classical quantitative prosody to modern scansion by accent. Rhyme,

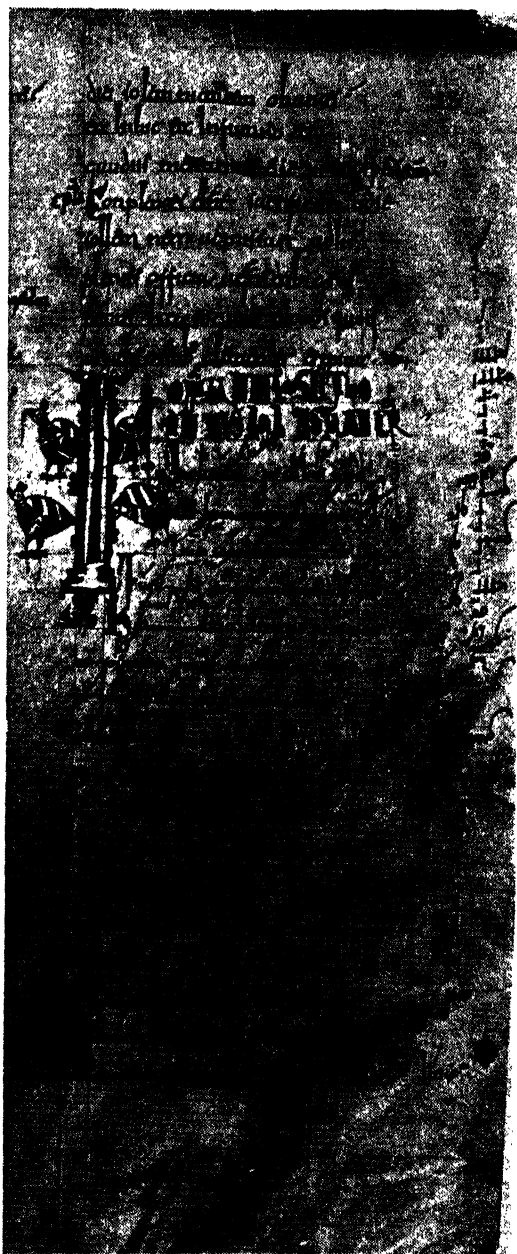
which appeared later, completed this transition. Psalmody, antiphons, responds and hymns were the elements that combined to form the complete musical setting of the liturgy, the form of which was established by Gregory the Great (d. 604). Doubtless not without some basis in fact, tradition has it that the fourteen years of his papacy were crowded with developments which only later evolution may have brought to maturity: the collection and standardizing of the historical musical formulæ; the foundation or restoration in Rome of a song-school entrusted with the task of preserving and cultivating, in the purity of its tradition, the wealth of liturgical song. From this establishment was to ensue the dissemination throughout the entire Christian world of the authentic Antiphonal. It



*St Ambrose, b. Trèves, 340; d. Milan, 397*

was very soon carried to Ireland and later into the vast Frankish Empire. It was often modified or simplified, but always restored. In fact, in course of time other 'dialects', so to speak, of ecclesiastical song—the Gallican, for instance, in the Western Frankish kingdom, and the Spanish (*i.e.* Mozarabic)—had to give way before the Roman; and only the Ambrosian preserved its minute and no longer clearly definable particularities.

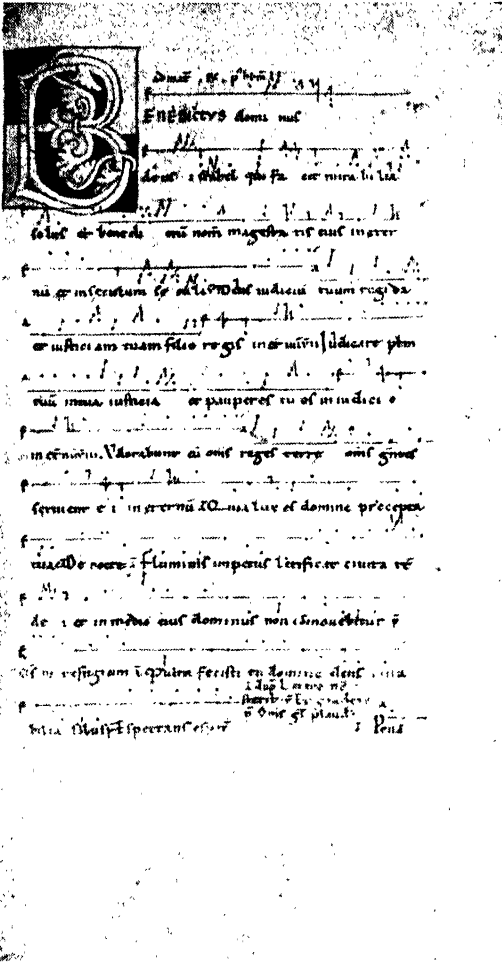
Western church music, or Gregorian song, was bound up with a uniform cult-language, Latin. The church song of the Eastern Roman Empire was without this bond. It consisted of religious poetry and music, which had grown up on national soil and consequently remained split up into a number of musical 'dialects', such as the Syrian, the Byzantine and the Armenian; and though these dialects were related they were individually distinguished by the regions to which they belonged. Later came Russian church song, trailing in the rear of these developments; indeed it might be described as a bastard child of Eastern church music, since not only 'Greek' (or Byzantine) but also Slavonic blood flowed in its veins. In Byzantine church music the development of the 'tropes'—short verses interpolated between the verses of the psalms—led to the creation of hymns, strophic poems, often of great length, which later, possibly in the seventh century, developed into the stricter and more elaborate 'canons', as they were called. It was not till the tenth century that definite limits were set to the use of this rich store of poetry and melody in the liturgy, with the result that the poetical, though not the musical,



*Mozarabic Chant, tenth century*

development of the Byzantine hymn came to an end.

The contrasting styles of responsorial and antiphonal singing shaped the liturgical



*Ambrosian Chant, twelfth century*

music of the whole of the Middle Ages, which derived its artistic life from them. Choral singing was by its very nature the vehicle of a simple, syllabic music and the representative of tradition, whereas solo-singing, with its delight in melismatic ornamentation, naturally challenged tradition and became the organ of progress. Singers who appeared to forget the impregnability of liturgical song might attempt to transform it, but in spite of them responsorial song continued to gain ground. It

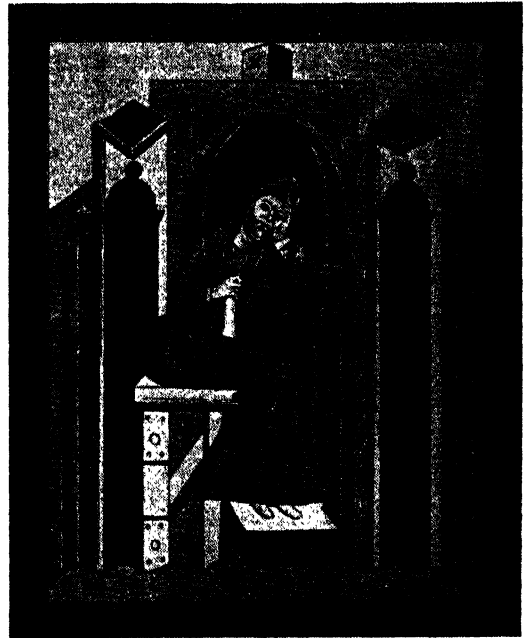
had its strongholds in the Mass which, though all its details were not finally determined until the eleventh century, slowly rose to be the most richly-equipped central element of the liturgy and took precedence over the offices of the Hours. And in the Church, congregational singing has tended to become restricted in favour of performance by a class of specially-trained singers.

Solo-singing has indeed always had to deal with certain conflicting claims—between verbal stress and metrical accent and between pure melodic expression and declamation. Already St Augustine was suspicious of the effect of richly melodic ornamentation. A particularly debatable field was the wordless Jubilus, the Alleluia-singing which Pope Damasus (*d.* 384) had introduced to the West from Jerusalem and which supplied the foundation of those curious interpolated songs, suggested by a Byzantine model, which from the ninth century were cultivated under the name of Proses or Sequences in the monasteries of Western Europe. The melismatic extension of the Alleluia was replaced by texts syllabically adapted to definite poetic forms suitable for antiphonal singing. Perhaps the piety of the monks had been offended by the luxuriance of the melismatic element, or the object may have been to give a definite rhythmical construction to melodies otherwise difficult to remember; or possibly pious fervour demanded that the nature of a particular office or liturgy should be emphasized. The same spirit also gave rise to the Tropes—syllabic interpolations ornamenting the music of the mass. The principal German author of Sequences was

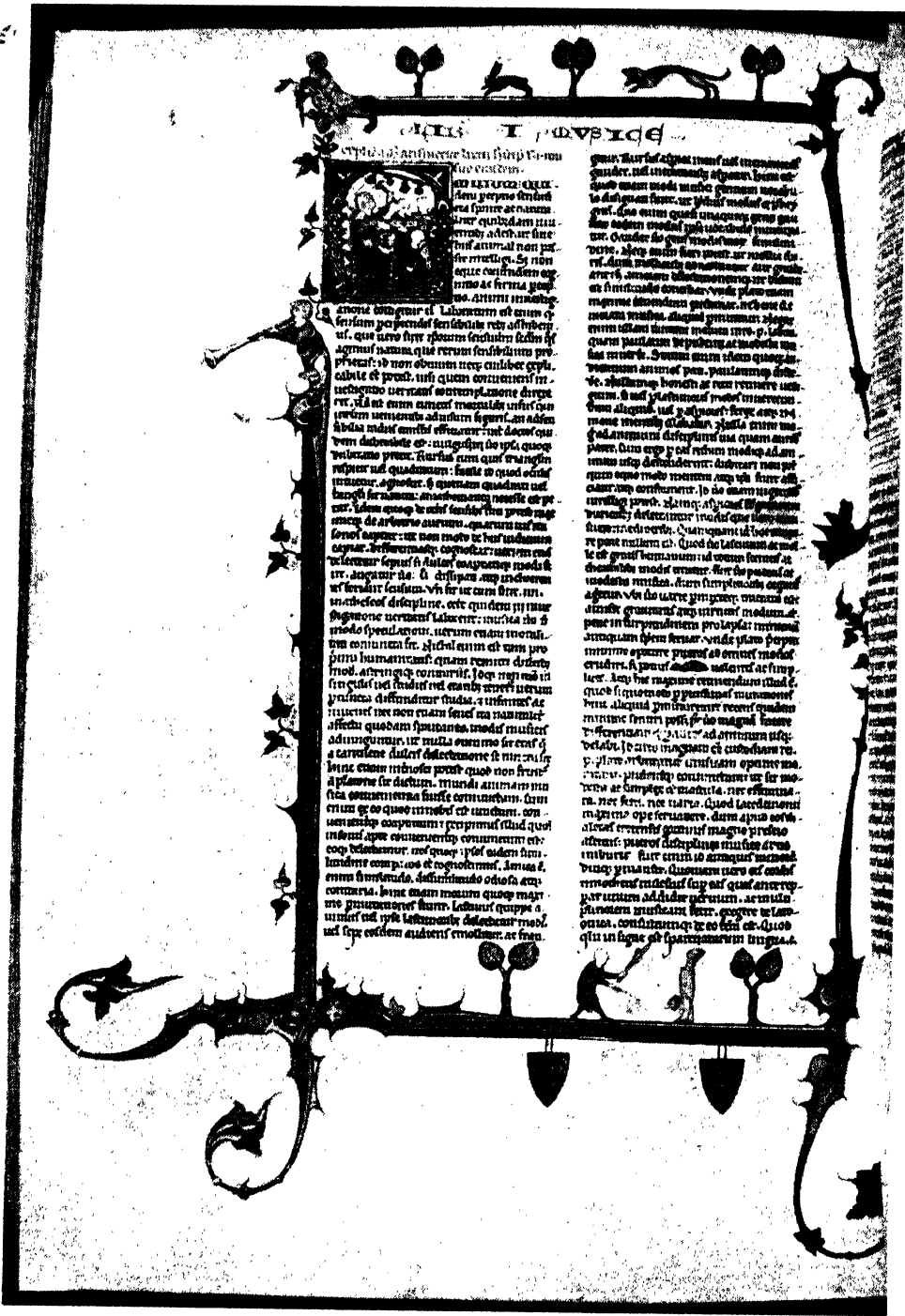
Notker Balbulus (*d.* 912), a monk of St Gall, to whom the text of the antiphon 'Media in vita in morte sumus' was for long erroneously attributed. Among his followers were Waltramus, Wipo, Berno von Reichenau and Hermann the Lame. Tuotilo, author of Tropes, was his contemporary and also lived at St Gall. We shall see that in these syllabic interpolations, which took the place of the oriental melismata, lay the seed of polyphony—the seed too of the liturgical drama, since many of these Tropes, those for Christmas and Easter, for example, were treated as dramatic dialogues with question and answer. The popular tendency which the Sequences revealed during their first rise in Alemania soon gained strength, and the later Sequence poems, such as those of Adam de St Victor (eleventh century), the 'Dies iræ' of Thomas de Celano, incorporated in the Requiem Mass, the magnificent 'Stabat Mater', probably by Jacopone da Todi (both of these dating from the thirteenth century) are, in both their literary and musical form, popular hymns.

In spite of all subjective movements, Gregorian song has on the whole exhibited a remarkable constancy; and the Church was right in exercising over music in this instance an artistic control which it never again, and in no other field, insisted upon with the same obstinacy. The vitality, ever effective and ever renewed, of Gregorian melody is based upon its simplicity and purity; upon its melodic severity, by which it may also have differentiated itself from the melodic expression of pagan Rome, since the regularization of its melodic progress rests upon a simplification of the

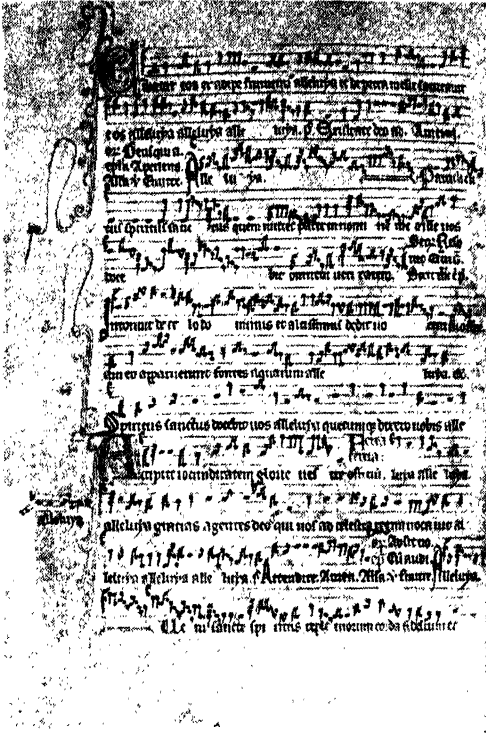
classical theory of melody; upon the distinguishing of four 'authentic modes', the first D, E, F, G, A, the second E, F, G, A, B, the third F, G, A, B, C, the fourth G, A, B, C, D, with which the four 'plagal modes' are connected by completion of the lower octave. Of these eight modes the authentic are to be regarded as a combination of the intervals of the fifth and fourth (D, A, D, etc.), the plagal as a combination of the fourth and fifth (A, D, A, etc.). The former create a feeling of rest and stability; in the latter there is a striving to come to rest. In medieval theory they were given, inaccurately, the names of the classical scales. Together with these designations they acquired the definite ethical attributes which each of those scales was supposed to possess. These associations held good until the



Notker Balbulus, *b. Elgg, nr. Zurich, 840;*  
*d. St Gall, 912*



Boethius, De musica, thirteenth century



*Choral Notation, akin to neumes,  
fourteenth century*

disappearance of the Church modes and furnished important indications of the significance they expressed. Within these modes melodic formulæ of Gregorian song were developed, and the distinct character of each mode is as evident from the preliminary intonation and final cadence as from the note chosen for the recitation. The typical Gregorian melody begins with the intonation, consisting of a definite formula, which rises to the monotone or reciting note; it remains on that note for a time and then descends again with a formal cadence. Though Gregorian song is necessarily restricted, there are numerous gradations of structure between the simple syllabic setting and the florid melismatic type, and to these

it owes its abundance of forms, from the simplest song-melody to an elaborate organization that suggests comparison with the later sonata.

The early Middle Ages made a comprehensive study of the theoretical treatment of plainsong. The most complete formulation of principles was achieved in the eleventh century at the Reichenau Monastery in the writings of Hermann the Lame. Classical conceptions naturally played a large part in the establishment of theory. The most important of those who helped in the transmission of the legacy was, as I have already mentioned, the late Roman philosopher Boethius (*d.* 526); from him was derived the conception of music that dominated the whole of the Middle Ages. Creative power was ranked below theoretical knowledge; and though this attitude helped to give music its place in the scholastic culture of the time, it was bound to introduce into living creation a strain of purely abstract artificiality.

The notation used for the Gregorian plainsong—that of the Neumes—was vastly superior to the Greek system. Its function was to call to mind a comparatively small number of familiar types of melody. For that reason the exact definition of Greek notation was abandoned. The music being purely vocal, the notation dispensed with indications of rhythm; but it possessed an immediate intelligibility that was lacking in the Greek system, since it actually gave a visual representation of the rise and fall of the melody. It became the sure foundation on which modern notation was to be built; the one thing it lacked—the exact indication



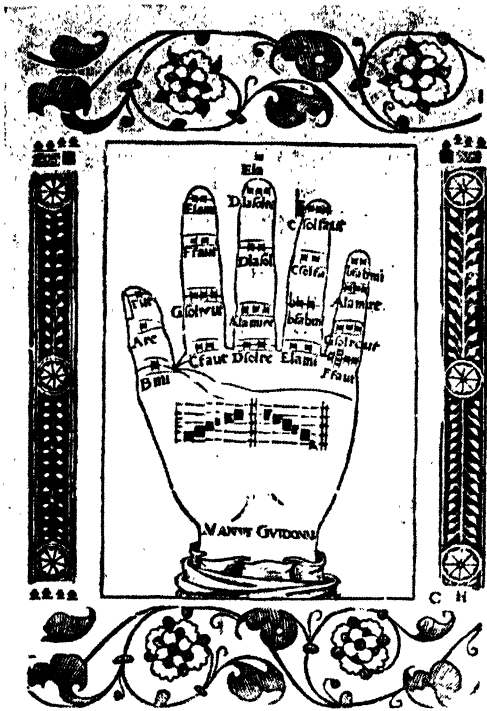


*Guido d'Arezzo demonstrating the monochord to Theodaldus, Bishop of Arezzo, twelfth century*

of intervals — was supplied by Guido d'Arezzo in the eleventh century. Anxious as he was to arrest the decay that was threatening the survival of church song, Guido hit on the simple but inspired device of fixing the pitch of the notes by means of lines a third apart. The non-representational system of letters and figures remained in force right down to the eighteenth century, but only for instrumental music—a quaint paradox, since the lines of the stave are actually nothing but the direct representation on paper of the strings of an instrument. Guido's 'solmization' also provided the theoretical basis for a more fully developed system of composition. Thus at a time when music was still confined to monody the

ground was already prepared for harmonic relations and the principle of transposition and modulation (or 'mutation'); and this system remained in force for the next five hundred years.

Solmization is an extension of the classical theory of scales, in so far as it shows the relationships of notes—*i.e.* the distinct position of the semitone in the scale—not in the tetrachord (series of four notes) but in the hexachord (series of six notes). The doctrine of solmization makes use of definite names for the notes—*ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la* (whence the name 'solmization')—and so at the same time indicates their individual functions. The three six-note scales, starting from what we call C, G and F (the last with the fourth note of the scale flattened) all exhibit exactly the same relationships of tones and semitones and so all begin with 'ut'. Modulation (or 'mutation') always means that a note has changed its function in the scale, and with the change of function it naturally changes its name as well. Our modern methods of indicating notes by words, such as Tonic *sol-fa*, are simply adaptations of solmization to our system of octaves with its more extensive opportunities for modulation. Guido's complete scale consisted of twenty notes, from G on the first line of the modern bass stave to E on the fourth space of the treble. As an aid to learning it, students were given a memory-line which was in a literal sense 'handy'. It began at the extremity of the thumb and ran more or less in the form of a spiral over the joints and tips of the fingers; it was known as the 'Guidonian Hand'. It was not till the beginning of the eighteenth century that this



*The Guidonian Hand*

system received its actual death-blow (from Mattheson); but in practice it had disappeared much earlier, when the Church modes gradually gave place to the establishment of the major and minor modes as the normal constituents of tonality about the year 1600.

#### POLYPHONY

When Gregorian plainsong was at its height the most important event in the whole of Western musical history occurred: the birth of polyphony. This was nothing less than the beginning of that development of an art based on laws of part-writing and harmony to which we remain subject at the present day. The ancient world had, of

course, often stumbled on the fact of harmonic consonance. The achievement of the Middle Ages was that men did not rest content with that fact but used it to cultivate a seed that was to grow to a new and immeasurable harvest.

Rousseau called polyphony 'a Gothic and barbarous invention'. He was right in a deeper sense than he realized. The pleasure in harmonic consonance is indigenous to the folk-music of the Northern races. We do not know whether the 'lurs'—similarly-voiced bronze horns for calling to the assembly, constantly found in pairs and dating from long before the time of Julius Cæsar—emitted a two-part signal blast to the Germanic peoples on the Western shores of the Baltic. It is certain that the Irish philosopher Johannes Scotus Erigena, about the middle of the ninth century, understood two-part singing (probably the Anglo-Saxon Aldhelm at the end of the seventh century already refers to it). If we may trust modern research it seems not impossible that other European countries also knew polyphony in the early Middle Ages. All our actual evidence, however, comes from the British Isles. Here at the end of the twelfth century Giraldus Cambrensis mentions a long-standing practice of popular part-singing, transmitted from father to son, in Wales and Northern England and considers that it was transplanted there from Denmark and Norway. Further, for the first time we meet in the Celtic crwth with a bowed string instrument (already attested in 609) the essence of which is the simultaneous sound of one string bringing out the melody against the harmony of the



*Asaph, playing a crwth (top left) with King David and other instrumentalists, eleventh century*

drone strings. Performance on this instrument must have led quite early to a selection of the more attractive harmonies. Akin to the crwth were various other instruments—the most perfect was the vielle—which maintained their hold on popular favour throughout the Middle Ages. The members of the viol family were their heirs, and the modern violin is their grandchild.

The development of polyphony depended in large measure on the theoretical writings of the churchmen. Or, perhaps one might say, the higher culture of the period continually acquired fresh stimulus from sources unknown to us and developed that stimulus still further on its own lines. Frequently the

source is still traceable, as in the famous 'rota' 'Sumer is i-cumen in' by the Monk of Reading (c. 1300), the monument of a folk-art of unforced imitation, of which the continuation does not appear till a century later. It may be a mere chance that in the widespread development along similar lines first France, then Italy, then suddenly England again came to the fore, till in the middle of the fifteenth century the 'Netherlanders' (Northern French, Flemish and German composers are included under this name) assumed an undisputed world-power in music.

The first application of theory to polyphony is the famous description of 'organum' in the treatise entitled 'Musica Enchiriadis', which was for long attributed to Hucbald (c. 840-930). This seems to indicate that both in the North and in the South an actual practice—the improvisation of a higher subsidiary part to a given melody—had become stereotyped into a rigid theoretical formula, *i.e.* the addition of one or more subsidiary parts to a liturgical melody at distances of a perfect fourth and fifth. The same treatise, however, also gives instruction in another kind of polyphony, known as 'free organum', in which the added part does not follow the given melody in strict parallel motion. We find polyphony also described by the Greek word 'diaphony' and later by its Latin equivalent 'discantus'.

In the course of time simple discant, which was unwilling to move more than a fifth away from the 'cantus firmus' (as the principal melody was called), very soon learned to assign to the interval of a third the place which theoretical harmony still

Sumer is i-cumen in. Hade sing cucu. Sumer sed and bloteþ  
 Per spira xpicola que dignacio celicus agrico  
 med and spring þe we nu. Sing cucu thwe bleteþ after  
 la pro uita vicio filio — non partem exposu  
 lomb thoup after calue cu Bulluc stertep bucke uertep  
 in mortis exicio — Qui captiuos semitruos  
 aunte sing cucu. Cucu cucu Wel singel þu cucu þe  
 a supplicio — Vite donat et secum coronat  
 Hanc rotam cantare possunt quatuor socii unus  
 tribus autem qm a tribus ut taliam de  
 dia. pte eol qui dicit ptem. Cantat  
 caly cedunt nichilum huius  
 ad pnam rotam sub crucis  
 pu nauer nu. u so u o.  
 sing cucu nu. Sing cucu  
 sing cucu. Sing cucu nu. Sing cucu nu. Sing cucu nu.

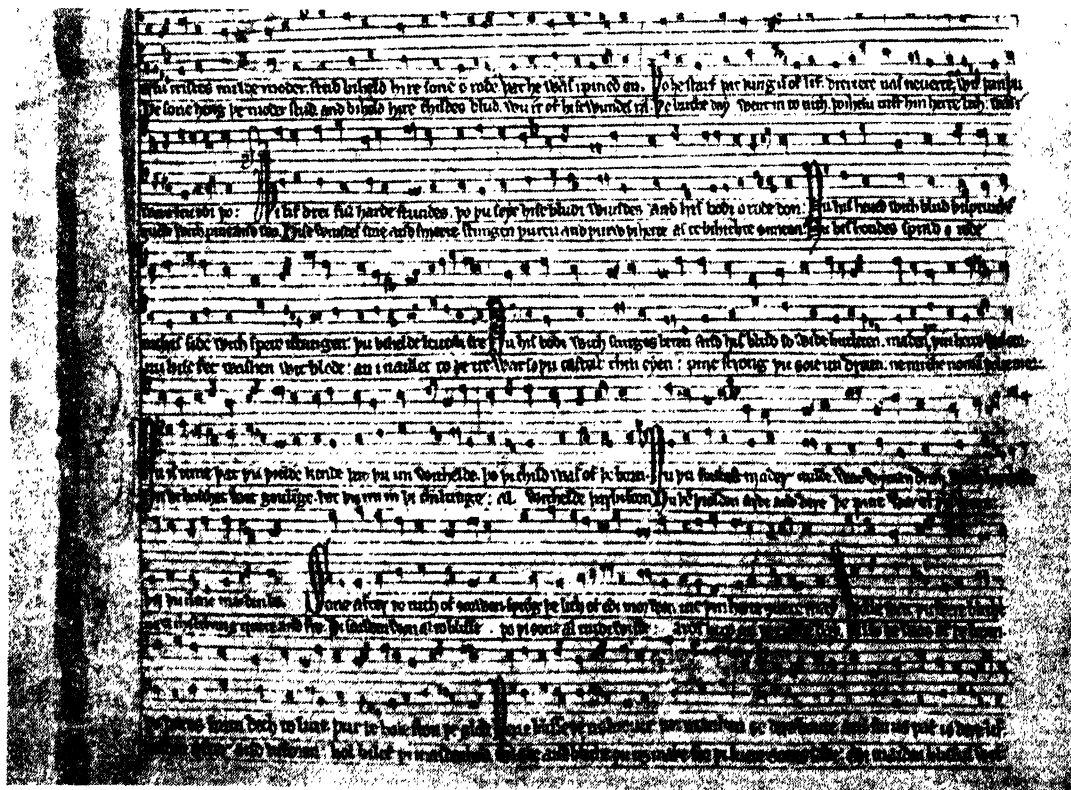
Sumer is i-cumen in, c. 1240

denied it, and came to realize the value of contrary motion as well as the parallel movement of the parts. The English Gymel in two or three parts, which later crossed over to the Continent as Faux-bourdon, corresponded to the French practice of 'Déchant' cultivated at Notre-Dame in Paris. It was a form of improvisation, in which the subsidiary parts moved in parallel thirds and sixths with the 'cantus firmus'.

It is astonishing that, in spite of the improvisatory character of this church music written for voices only, a considerable number of actual records should have survived. Thus from the eleventh century, at the end of which music took a great step

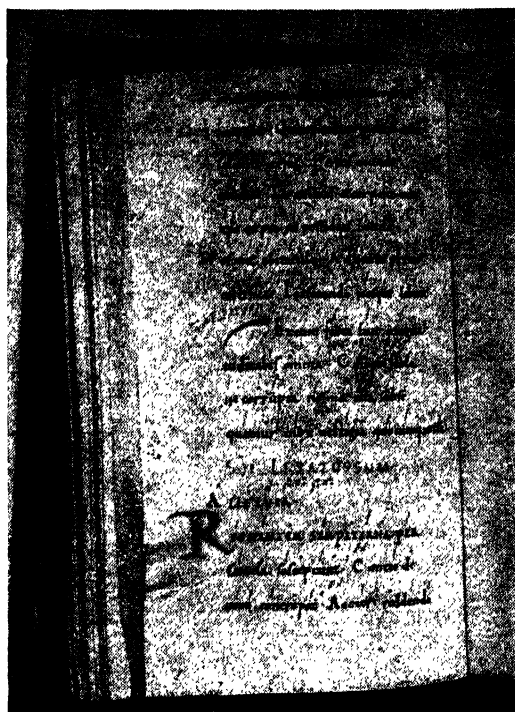
forward in France, we have the so-called Winchester Tropes, containing over 150 'organa' or pieces for the Mass and the Office, which are characteristically still written in neumes, so that the intervals between the parts is not clear. But manuscripts in line notation dating from the twelfth century give us examples of note-against-note compositions in which the duplum, or upper part, already has a more independent movement. From this it is only a step to the work of the Paris school of Notre Dame, the principal record of which is a manuscript at Florence dating from the middle of the thirteenth century.

At the end of the twelfth century Paris



*An English Gymel, 'Jesu cristes milde moder', thirteenth century*

became the main centre for polyphonic music. Here we meet already the names of two typical composers: the elder, Maître Léonin (after 1150), and the younger, Pérotin 'le Grand', who reached the height of his creative activity about 1220. In mentioning these names we should remember that the position occupied by musicians in the Middle Ages was fundamentally different from that of the modern 'artist'. The medieval musician's life was bounded by the culture of the Church. This was the circle in which he moved and worked; and only if he was a man of genuinely creative gifts did he rise from the position of an anonymous craftsman to the full glory of independence and fame. Léonin worked at his Organa as a goldsmith at some fine ornament. He produced a cycle of compositions for the whole of the Church's year, including Responses, Graduals and Alleluias in the polyphonic style (he did not touch the rest of the liturgy), and called his work or allowed it to be called 'Magnus liber organi de graduali et antiphonario'. For the first time we have a strong contrast between the rigid plainsong Tenor and the decorative melismata that move above it. In fact, the upper part has driven the Tenor into comparative obscurity in the background. The 'discant' parts of this 'Magnus Liber' were remodelled by Pérotin; he shortened or expanded them, introduced further melodic elaboration and gave the upper parts a livelier and more 'worldly' character. But much of it he left unaltered; he had no interest in the production of an individual work of art. Three- and four-part Organa by him have also been preserved.



*A Winchester Troper, thirteenth century*

All these forms belong to the most primitive stage of polyphony; but it was not long before improvisation was accompanied by the appearance of a further development in the art. This may be called 'polymelody', the compulsory combination of two or more distinct melodies with different rhythms and indeed—what was a most remarkable custom—with texts that were not only different but actually in different languages. The root of this remarkable custom lay in the importance of the Trope, so significant a feature of the spirit and art of the Middle Ages. In the past the Trope had been merely an interpolation in the liturgical chant; but from the twelfth century it was used as a subsidiary part above the liturgical theme in the tenor, to which it

supplied an appropriate interpretation, the two parts being heard simultaneously. Such a combination of several melodies naturally became possible only when the principle of time had previously been established and the nature of consonance and dissonance understood. Among the theorists who accomplished this task was the famous Franco of Cologne who perfected the principle of triple time. The principal form of this primitive yet artistic 'polymelody' was the Motet, which in some cases combined one or even several secular songs with a liturgical Tenor. 'Motet' was the name given to the part with a new text over the given Tenor; over the Motet a third part might be placed (Triplum), over that a fourth (Quadruplum). But in the thirteenth century the favourite practice was to rest content with the Triplum; a fragment of plainsong served as a bass, presumably for instruments, and with this were combined two church paraphrases or more often two secular songs with French texts.

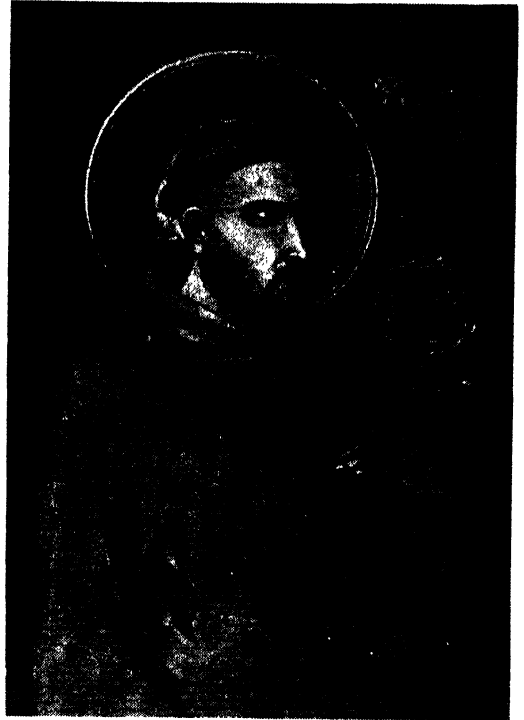
The decisive step from Organum to the Motet was marked by the textual, as also the musical, independence of the upper part or Duplum. This accounts for the term Motet, the text of the upper part being an extension of the 'mot' of the Tenor. The real difference between a three-part organum and a three-part motet is that in the former the two upper parts are twin melodies, while in the motet the Triplum is independent of its companion. There is little question here of free composition, of 'creation' in the modern sense of the word; it is an art rather of combination, and this is evident from the numerous ways in which

melodies could be combined, as shown in the manuscripts that have been preserved. The same Tenor is often accompanied by several Dupla, and the same Duplum by different Tripla. Invention had no part in the spirit of the Middle Ages. The given material was treated with protective care and reverence; it could be used but not rejected. As Friedrich Ludwig says, 'the repertory of Tenors used in the "Magnus Liber" remained for a long time practically the only source for the Tenors of the French motets'. The most curious feature of this form of polyphony was the ingenuous combination of sacred and secular, of liturgical and profane, the arbitrary union—as it seems to us—of incompatible elements. This practice is the result of the fact—noticeable quite early in the Motet—that less and less notice was taken of the connexion between the texts of the Tenor and Duplum. This cheerful unconcern grew until it reached the point where an actual delight was taken in bringing together the most violent contrasts in a single piece. How did this come about? The answer is that in the meantime a secular art, an art of the laity, had been developed to the highest degree of independence, and the Church and monastery were no longer the only places where music was cultivated.

From the eleventh century there had existed side by side with the Gregorian chant a secular art of song belonging to the upper classes of civilized society—the art of the Provençal Troubadours and the Northern French Trouvères. Poetry and music were here fused in an inseparable unity. In spirit their art derived from the popular

music of the wandering minstrels (descendants of the mimes and 'histriones' of the Roman Empire) and the ideals of the period of the Crusades supplied it with new sources of inspiration; but it borrowed its actual form from the monastic Sequence. Of the monasteries that cultivated the Trope and Sequence with loving care and made possible the communication of their treasures to secular art, the most important, apart from St Gall, was St Martial de Limoges, and it was from the neighbourhood of Limoges that the first and most distinguished of the troubadours came. The art of the troubadours began originally with religious stanzas and then turned to subjects and forms of expression which stirred the lofty temper and knightly fancy of the nobles: courtly love, politics and morals (in the 'Sirventes'), dialogues of the most diverse kinds ('Tensos'), disputations (the 'Jeu-parti'), laments for the death of a nobleman, topical songs, and finally the form related to the Sequence—the 'Lai'. Beside this repertory for the castle there grew up that for the village: dances and maying-songs ('Estampidos'), Rondeaux and Pastourelles. The epics ('Chansons de geste') belong to both spheres.

Just as the germ of the sacred drama lay in the antiphonal scheme of the Sequence and in the Trope, as soon as it lighted on the appropriate material—such as the conversation of the three Marys hastening to the Tomb, the drama of the Wise and Foolish Virgins, and the Daniel story—so the secular drama developed out of the dance-song. These first dramatic Pastourelles display their folk-character in that they are seldom

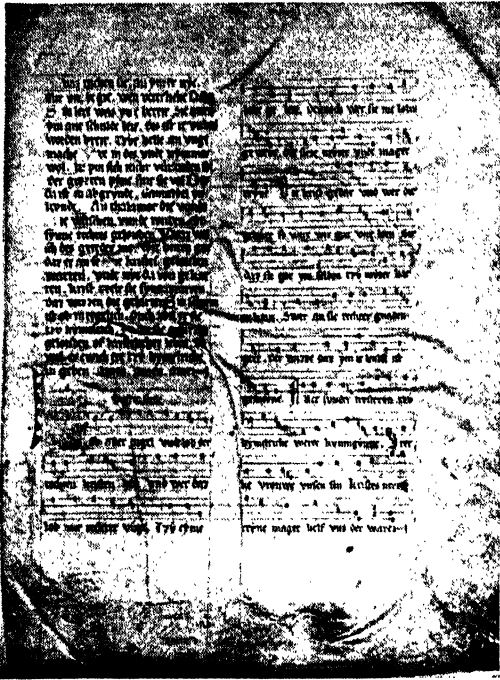


*St Francis of Assisi. b. Assisi, 1181/2; d. Assisi, 1226*

without some sarcastic reference to the courtly classes. To the Jongleur fell the task of presenting the music, of giving formal shape to the tunes which his master invented; and it is extraordinary how successful he was in finding the musical solution of the problems of form presented by the varied, elaborately organized and even over-refined strophic structure of the poet, and with what subtlety he observed the construction of the strophe, the indications of rhyme, the repetitions of part of the strophe and the relation of the strophe to the refrain.

The text of a large number of songs by the Provençal poets, the Troubadours, has been preserved, but unfortunately only a





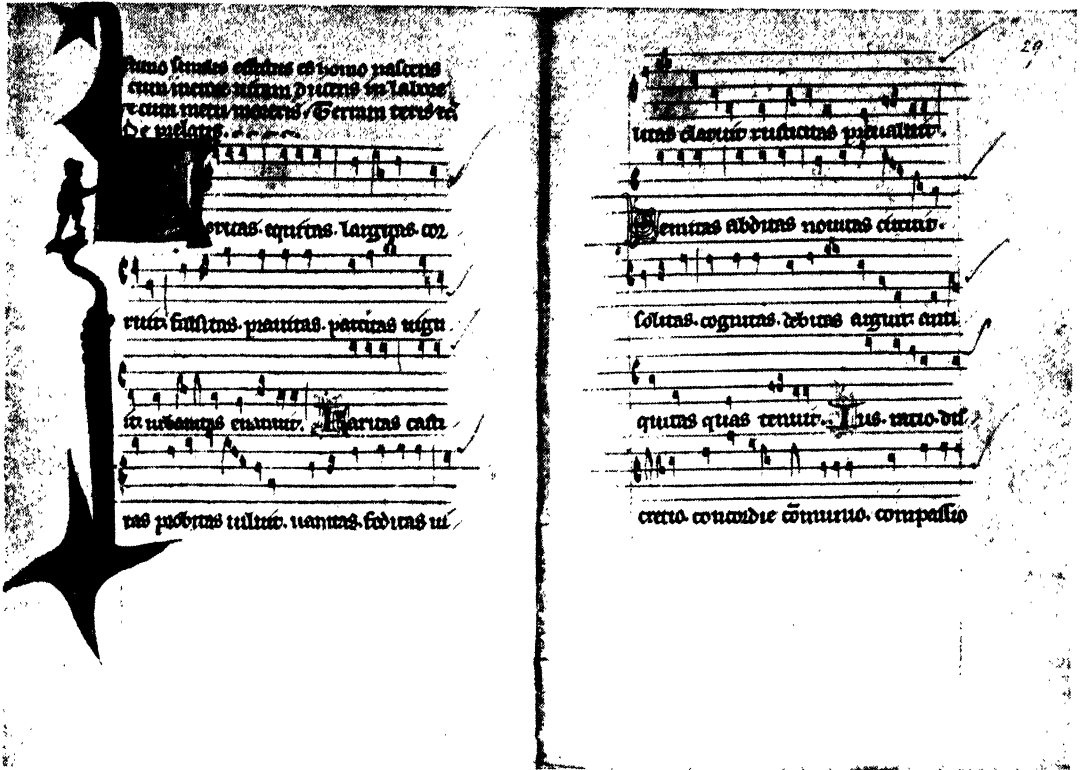
*The Jena Manuscript, c. 1490*

few—just over 250—of the melodies have survived. Those of the most famous of them, Bertran de Born, have practically all disappeared. We are much more fortunate with the melodies of the Trouvères, of which we possess several hundred, in many cases more than one tune to the same poem. Four generations of Trouvères are reckoned during the period from the end of the twelfth to the end of the thirteenth century. Count Thibaut of Champagne, King of Navarre, was the most prolific representative of the third generation; in the fourth we can see the first signs of the change from the aristocracy to the middle-classes.

Unlike Provence and Northern France, Spain and Italy produced practically nothing but single-voice settings of poems of a sacred or spiritual character. In Spain the

principal and indeed almost the only work of this kind is the song-cycle in praise of the Virgin, written by King Alfonso X of Castile, surnamed 'el Sabio' (the Wise), who reigned from 1252 to 1284, and provided with a number of older melodies which according to Spanish scholars are derived from Mauro-Andalusian dances. In Italy a new type of sacred song owed its origin to the influence of that great Saint Francis of Assisi (1182-1226), who was canonized two years after his death. The extent of his influence may be realized by remembering that fifty years after his first foundation there were already eight thousand Franciscan houses all over Europe. This amazing man broke down the Church's privileged right to sing God's praises and enabled the laity to create their own hymns. A new source of inspired popular religious song came into existence—the 'Laude', congregational hymns for domestic devotions, flagellants' pilgrimages and processions, the melodies of which scarcely changed their character at all until the beginning of the seventeenth century. Before long these hymns adopted dialogue form and so eventually gave birth to the later oratorio; but until about 1400 they remained strictly single-voice settings.

As at the height of the courtly art the Jongleur played the most important part in the discovery of the musical side of it, so after its decay the ballad-singer or mendicant musician was active in the dissemination of the secular music of the Middle Ages. Thence proceeded that treasure of song-melody which, side by side with the Gregorian chant but approximating more



*A Troubadour Song, late thirteenth century*

nearly by a natural growth to our major and minor tonalities, became the melodic kernel of all the ecclesiastical and secular music of the following centuries. The Tensos and Sirventes of the Trouvères, together with the topical songs of the German Minnesänger, entered on their long winter sleep in the miniature-bedecked manuscripts, while popular tunes were beginning to permeate the whole of polyphonic music with a living force.

The melodies of the Minnesänger were first noted down at a time when they were no longer to be heard from the lips of their creators. Of all the great collections of songs mentioned in histories of literature only two contain melodies; the first is the

Jena manuscript, dating from the end of the fourteenth century, which contains ninety-one tunes, and the second, the so-called 'Colmar' manuscript, which has 107—making a total of 196 (two becoming common to both collections). There are also a few further pieces, the most beautiful of which are those by the popular singer Neidhart von Reuenthal. In the songs by the Monk of Salzburg, contained in the Mondsee-Wiener manuscript, there are already some bits of rude polyphony. Only a few decades ago the discovery of the 'Münster fragment' gave us a few more melodies by Walther von der Vogelweide, the finest German song-writer of the Middle Ages. A late follower of the Minnesänger



*Walther von der Vogelweide. b. Tyrol (?)  
c. 1165; d. Würzburg (?), c. 1230*

was the South Tyrolese composer Count Oswald von Wolkenstein (*d.* 1445), who also made some experiments in part-writing.

The middle-class art of the Meistersinger, a survival of the 'Minnesäng', continued for a longer period as a thing worthy of respect but always becoming spiritually drier and musically impotent—a mixture of devotional and secular song, not an organic compound. In these songs the relationship between word and sound, between text and melody, became changed. New texts were written to given melodies; but the tunes themselves were often prolonged to such an impossible length with a mass of ornaments—'Blumen' (flowers),

as they were called—that it is very difficult to recognize their original shape, and the poems were limited to didactic and moralizing themes. However, among the many schools of South and Central Germany there were one or two prominent Meistersinger who are not to be despised as melodists, such as the Swabian weaver Michel Beheim in the fifteenth century and the Nuremberg shoemaker-poet Hans Sachs in the sixteenth. The richest collection of Meistersinger tunes (334 'Tone' or tones) is preserved in Adam Puschmann's great song-book, dating from 1584.

It is no mere coincidence that among the motet-composers of the thirteenth century



*Oswald von Wolkenstein. b. Gröden, nr. Brixen,  
c. 1377; d. Hauenstein Castle, 1445*

Durch den vvolerfarnen/ sijn eichen vnd weiserambten Hans Sachsens für  
nemmen Teutschen Poeten/ mit höchstem fleiß vnd lust/ in dis vierde Buch zusammen ge  
tragen/ Doch alles New/ vnd in den vorigen drey Büchern nicht gedruckt.

Also war ich Hans Sachs gestalt  
Gleich ein vad achtzig Jar alt/  
Seben Wochen/ darzu fünf Tag  
Da ich von hüßschmerzlich mit Nag  
Durch die allmechtig Gottes wohl  
Ward gefordert auß dem jacherthal



Was von den lieben Engeln Gieß  
Getragen in Abrahams Schoß.  
Leb nun im frid/ derj mich verquilt  
Nem lieber veyland Jesus Christ  
In ichs vad si hergahen Jar  
Der nungernde Jamer wan

M. D.

LXXVIIII.

Mit Römi: Kay: May: Gnad vnd Privilegio.

Hans Sachs. b. Nuremberg, 1494; d. Nuremberg, 1576

we find a few trouvères, one of whom, Adame de la Hale, became with his 'Jeu de Robin et de Marion' the ancestor of all dramatic poet-composers. The motet, originally an embellishment of Divine Service but forgetting more and more the consideration of that purpose, pursued a course further and further in the direction of secularity. The liturgical Tenors were replaced by secular song-tunes or at all events were converted into merely instrumental basses. When in the year 1324 a Papal Bull laid down stringent regulations against the increasing misuse of polyphony in the Church, the 'New Art' was based almost entirely on a middle-class secularity, and continued so for a long time, at least in

Italy. 'Ars nova' was the name taken by the music of the early fourteenth century in contrast to 'Ars antiqua', the motet style of the previous century, principally because it added the doctrine of duple time to the triple time which the 'Ars antiqua' regarded as the only road to salvation, and at the same time brought about an extraordinary refinement of notation—the development of an abstract theory of time-measurement, which finally freed polyphony from dependence on a text and hence on the singing voice, and gave it wings of its own. With the 'Ars nova' arrived the possibility of an independent polyphonic instrumental art. The name 'Ars nova' was given to this new art about 1325 by the Bishop of Meaux,

Philippe de Vitry (1291-1361), well-known as a musician and poet, who also began to strike out new paths as a 'composer'. The most remarkable evidence of the change in notation is furnished by the celebrated Montpellier manuscript. This contains a collection of motets, examples of the old and of the new style being preserved in separate sections; so that in the same manuscript we find both the old or modal notation and also the new or mensural; here the change from the quadrangular to mensural notation is quite plainly marked. There now began a time of endless confusion in notation, which was not cleared up till nearly a century later. About the time of Dante's prime (c. 1300), when the Western world received through him its first great poetry in the vernacular, there arose in Pierre de la Croix of Amiens the first man to make a modest attempt at establishing a new system of rhythm by inventing the smaller note-values. The contrast between long and short notes became more sharply defined as the difference between them became greater, and the vocal character of the art of polyphony changed in favour of the possibilities and tendencies of an instrumental style. The whole art became 'humanized'. It escaped from the narrow bondage of the Church; the gradual replacement of Latin by French tenors is one of the signs of change. Creative personality made its appearance on an entirely new level of individual craftsmanship. North of the Alps the fourteenth century was the age



Adam de la Halle. *b. Arras, c. 1230;*  
*d. Naples, c. 1287*

of Guillaume de Machaut, south of the Apennines that of Francesco Landino.

Machaut was born in Champagne. He was for many years in the service of the warrior King John of Bohemia and later enjoyed the patronage of the French court. He also became canon of Reims, a post which he held till his death in 1377, honoured and respected as a spiritual leader of his time. He was one of the first artist-musicians of the pre-Renaissance period. Even he did not achieve complete freedom in creation; but he worked up his *lais*, motets and masses to the highest pitch of artistry and complexity, showing extraordinary rhythmic subtlety in the use of



*Guillaume de Machaut. b. Rheims, c. 1300; d. Rheims, 1377*

syncopation, his favourite device, and in his 'Ballades'—the term includes Rondeaux and Virelais—he produced a genuine artistic creation, in which at least one subsidiary part was freely invented above a given melody. The 'Ballade' was an ingeniously constructed song or duet of one or more verses, with one or two supporting or purely ornamental free parts. For well over a century it remained the favourite musical form throughout the Western world. The elaborate artifice of the music had its counterpart in the courtly compliments of the text and the ostentatious splendour of the language, full of learned mythological allusions. Machaut's claim that the ear

should be used to check a completed composition was the first indication that the combination of given melodies, the distinguishing characteristic of the old motet style, was beginning to yield to a freer, more individual attitude towards creative art.

In Italy even more than in France the new style of notation was the sign of a spiritual awakening. The music of the early Renaissance, which centred in Northern Italy and Florence in particular, coincided with the first great flights of Italian poetry of the generation after Dante—the work of Boccaccio and Petrarch—and occupied a corresponding position in musical history.

In place of the stiffness of tonality characteristic of the 'Ars antiqua' there appeared a finer perception of the possibilities of modulation. In place of the old insensitiveness to faults of part-writing there came a purer style, to which the theorists gave their support by forbidding parallel fifths, unisons and octaves. For the first time there appeared a free art for the delight of a receptive public, who appreciated and honoured it as art and gave it its place in the culture of civilized society. A surprising abundance of musical forms was suddenly made evident, and a new conception of artistic unity drove the motet style into the background. Composers returned once more with particular pleasure to two-part writing; but at the same time they began to contrive new and more individual settings to fit the stanzas of contemporary poetry, such as the Madrigal and the Ballata, and whether the tune was in the upper or the lower part it was cunningly embellished with a whole host of *floriture*. The form was made still more elaborate and complex by the addition of preludes, interludes and postludes for all manner of instruments. Side by side with this more refined art-song came the resurrection of the old popular 'rota' in an immensely improved form as the 'Caccia', a canon for two voices over an original instrumental bass. The form took the name 'Caccia' from its text, which originally presented a hunting-scene or at any rate some lively incident. Such pieces were the first examples and the precursors of a long line of vocal programme music.

The removal—at once voluntary and involuntary—of the papal court from

Rome to Avignon was symbolical of a change in music. Italian art continued at first dependent on the Paris model, and the South of France bridged the gulf between the more mature work of the French composers and the vernal music of Italy. But about the middle of the fourteenth century Italy broke free from this dependence—only, it is true, to relapse into it again completely at the end of the century. On both sides of the Apennines, in North Italy and in Florence, from about 1340 there were active a whole series of minor composers—the earliest names being those of Giovanni da Cascia and Jacopo di Bologna—every one of whom had individuality in a greater or lesser degree. At the head of all these comes Francesco Landino, the blind organist of San Lorenzo in Florence (*d.* 1397), master of all instruments of the time, who was crowned king of poets or musicians at Venice in 1364. To see an immediate reflection in literature of the influence of his art, one should read Giovanni da Prato's 'Paradiso degli Alberti' or the stories in Boccaccio's 'Decamerone'. His likeness has been preserved on his tombstone in San Lorenzo, where he is represented with his little portable organ, still at that time primarily a secular instrument. Poetry and music both reached a new and glorious level of achievement. A large number of the works of the Italian 'Ars nova' have come down to us in the so-called Squarcialupi manuscript in the Laurenziana at Florence, written in the first quarter of the fifteenth century after the fading of this 'proto-Renaissance' or forerunner of the Renaissance proper.

With this provision of new forms, added to the old forms of the Conductus and the simpler syllabic composition of polyphonic works, music managed for nearly two hundred years, giving preference now to the one, now to the other according to the end in view, and learned to handle them, within its limitations, with greater freedom and dexterity. The limitations must not be forgotten. The essence of the art of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries lay in the subordination of accompanying parts, generally for instruments and richly ornamented, to a single principal part (rarely more than one) which was sung and conformed closely to a song-text, whether sacred or secular; this principal part was the tenor. Composers were still confined to the 'horizontal' conception of music, and harmony was the chance result of the movement of the parts. But it is quite clear that in this music we are faced with an alliance of vocal and instrumental elements abundantly rich in possibilities, however uncertain we may be about the interpretation of details. The advance in the fifteenth century on the artistic standard of the fourteenth was many-sided and far-reaching. There was the increase in the number of parts to a normal three or four. Composers showed an increasing delight in displaying their melodic creative gifts by the



Francesco Landino. b. Florence, c. 1325; d. Florence 1397





*Squarcialupi Codex, thirteenth century*

addition of new and different parts to existing compositions. Then what had been free accompanying parts were themselves placed in the tenor as the basis of new compositions, and composers delighted to show their mutual esteem by such borrowings. Moreover the style of the art-song with instrumental accompaniment, as it thrived and blossomed under the care lavished on it, reacted on the composition of music for the Church. The hymn, the motet, parts of the Mass and ultimately the Mass as a whole were subjected to a polyphonic treatment in which the Gregorian melodies were enveloped in a rich instrumental vesture of accompanying parts and added counterpoints. The need was soon felt to divide up the Mass by changing the number of voices used in its several sections, while at the same time it was considered essential to combine these sections into an artistic whole through the unity of the tenor or the uniformity of themes in the upper parts. Both in sacred and secular music of this century we note the increasing habit of developing the subsidiary parts from themes of the principal part, so as to link them together intellectually, to establish artistic unity not merely by simultaneous combination as in the old motet, but also in the succession of motives. In the rise of a free type of imitation lay the greatest achievement of this century; so great was the enthusiasm with which it cultivated strict canonic writing and made it its boast to move with the highest skill under the greatest restraint.

With regard to the incorporation of the secular style into Church music a distinction must be kept between the forms of the motet



*MS. of English Passion music, c. 1450*

(or hymn) and the separate sections of the Mass on the one hand and on the other the composition of the Mass as a whole. Even in the fifteenth-century motets there were both old and modern types. The old type was still linked up with the early motet of the previous century, which comprised more than one text; it would introduce for instance a second text, with allusions to the particular Church festival, to be sung at the same time as the liturgical text, the whole being accompanied by one or two additional instrumental or vocal parts. It was this type of motet that the musicians of the time favoured for occasions of very special importance; an example is the work written by Antonius Romanus for the enthronement of Doge Tomaso Mocenigo in 1413, a show-piece of the greatest solemnity and

magnificence, combining both the ecclesiastical and the secular styles. In the modern type of motet, on the other hand, the dominant role was allotted to one principal part, to which the accompanying parts—usually two lower ones—remained subservient. But with all this subservience there was a close similarity of character between the parts. It was as if the old *Faux-bourdon* were coming to life again in a higher and more artistically conscious sphere of activity. This does not, however, alter the fact that fifteenth-century music was a simpler art, less subjective and more popular in character than it had been in the fourteenth century.

Isolated sections of the Mass were also treated in the same way as the motets. The principal source of the music of this time—the celebrated Trent manuscripts, which were originally in the cathedral there and later in Vienna and have been in the possession of the Italians since 1919, and which contain in all about 1600 works by French, Burgundian and Flemish composers—consists principally of such isolated portions of the 'Ordo Missae'. Usually the plainsong melody lies in the upper part, but it is so obscured by ornaments, *appoggiaturas* and alterations of rhythm, so individualized and 'coloured' that it is by no means easy to distinguish the essential melody. The 'accompaniment' to this part derives from its melodic inflexions, and there are all sorts of manipulations both simple and ingenious of the subsidiary parts.

Among complete, connected settings of the whole of the Mass, which are still rare in the middle of the century, the greater number also have an ornamented liturgical

upper part; but all the sections employ a more or less uniform principal theme, which serves as an emblem of the relationship between them. Side by side, however, with this so-called *discant* Mass the tenor Mass was already beginning to emerge. The tenor Mass holds the texture of the parts together from within, as it were, and to this end uses a liturgical, or more rarely a secular, melody that is generally free from ornamentation, and repeats this melody, often with severe rhythmical modifications, for each section of the Mass. No one troubled very much whether the tunes had an ecclesiastical flavour. This time of change and unrest, this period of transition from the Middle Ages into modern times, this century at the close of which America was discovered, which was still hesitating between mysticism and humanism, did not distinguish very exactly between ecclesiastical and secular. The appropriation of secular tunes—one of which, 'L'homme armé' was used by nearly every important musician of the day—went on for over a century, and could not be entirely eradicated even by the strict spirit of the Counter-reformation, which found expression in the resolutions of the Council of Trent.

The external history of this development is that of a great artistic achievement, which seems to have started in England at the beginning of the fifteenth century and is associated with the famous name of John Dunstable. His pupil Binchois carried the impulse to the Continent; but Guillaume Dufay, likewise a pupil of Dunstable, bears the greatest name among composers of the time. With him and his followers, Ockeghem,

Obrecht and many others, began the unique pre-eminence of the Netherland School. With Josquin Després's larger personality the movement reached its summit and was carried indeed over the summit into new artistic territory. Singers and composers from the Netherlands not only in the churches of their fatherland but also in Paris, Burgundy, Rome and Naples held the monopoly of artistic composition. In Spain and North Italy they drove a national art of song, modest but full of promise for the future, completely into the background, though it is true that they occasionally took an active interest in it themselves. Only in Germany was their influence less active; and although for this reason Germany remained a good way behind the advance of the time and did not reach the climax of its medieval artistic development till the middle of the sixteenth century, German composers were none the less distinguished from the international art of the period by quite definite characteristics of style in organ music (Konrad Paumann) and in hymns and motets (Adam von Fulda), by the purity of their melodic style, by the struggle for vital expression and richness of instrumental tone, and by their aversion to the use of mere artifice for its own sake.

One of the theoretical writers of the close of the fifteenth century—the most important of them all—the Netherlander Johannes Tinctoris (1435-1511), who worked at the court of Ferdinand of Aragon in Naples and to whom we owe the first æsthetic and historical judgments and the first little dictionary of musical terms, has recorded the historical fact of the origin of this move-



*Guillaume Dufay. b. (?)Hainault, before 1400; d. Cambrai, 1474, and Gilles Binchois, b. (?)Mons, c. 1400; d. Lille, 1460*

ment in England. Another proof, still extant, is the so-called Old Hall manuscript, which contains 138 compositions entirely by English musicians. John Dunstable (c. 1370-1453) was the first to treat a given 'cantus firmus' with free ornamentation and to put a free and simple accompaniment to it. A sort of return to the old Celtic pentatonic gave his work a new power and popular appeal. His two pupils Binchois and Dufay carried his art to the Kingdom of Burgundy, which lay between France and Germany and was destroyed before the end of the fifteenth century; this land was of great cultural importance in the formation of social standards, in its conceptions of chivalry and love and in all the ceremonial of court and city. The Emperor Maximilian I was a later romantic heir of all these ideals. For this aristocratic and middle-class society Gilles Binchois, who was born about 1400 at Bins

Musica est modulandi pericia citius sonoy consistens. Es  
hinc complex est. scilicet. Armonica. Organica. ac etiam  
Rithmica.

Musica armonica est illa: que p uocis practice humani.  
Musica organica: est illa que fit in instrumentis sicut soni  
causantibus.

Musica rithmica est illa que fit per instrumenta tactu so-  
num reddentia.

Musicus est qui personis rationis beneficio speculationis ca-  
nendi officium assumit. Hinc diffinitio inter musicos  
et ceteros quida sub tali metoy serie posuit. Vetus.

M usicos et canoy magna est differentia.

Illi scilicet ipsi dicunt que compositis musica.

Et qui dicit quod non sapit repertum bestia.

Musico est unius uocis in aliam uariatio.

PER N CAPITVLVM .XII ::

Natus est propicius per qui in omni loco cuius clausis e  
aut caritur. et ex illo caritur uocis deducuntur.

Notus est caritur fini uerbo: sine uerbis annexus.

Notus est signum uocis ceteri uel inuerti ualoris.

PER O CAPITVLVM .XIII ::

Obtusa idem est quod diapason aut dupla coniunctio et  
concordia. Vnde secundum hec duo significatione: eam  
in diapason diffinitur.

Officium idem est quod missa secundum hispalos.

PER P C. .XIII ::

Paula est uociferantis signum: secundum quantum no-  
us cui appropriatur. fender.

¶¶.

Johannes Tinctoris. 'Terminorum musicae diffini-  
torium', c. 1498

or Mons in Hainault, was *maestro di cappella* and chaplain at the court of Philippe le Bon, and died in 1460 at Lille, wrote his fifty-odd songs, beside which his church music is of quite minor importance. They are astonishingly sensitive and delicate songs—gently moving voice-parts with two instrumental tenors, songs of farewell and other love-songs in strophic form, which had a particularly strong influence on South German song-writing, an influence that was still effective at the beginning of the sixteenth century. Guillaume Dufay was a much more universal type, one of those composers who represent a whole century. He was born some time before 1400, probably at Chimay in Hainault, worked intermittently in the

papal chapel, and died in 1474, a canon at Cambrai. Dufay's compositions include every type of music of that time, from chansons and motets of every description to settings of the complete mass. In the elegance, polish, sonority and general character of his style he embraces all the national elements of his time. He is French in his chansons, Nordic to a striking extent in his motets and masses, Italian in the grace that informs all that he touches. Like Lassus a hundred years later, he is one of the great international figures of music.

These three, Dunstable, Binchois and Dufay, are commonly grouped together under the title of the 'first Netherland school'. If this be accepted, we must also admit a second Netherland School, in which a list of important composers is headed by Johannes Ockeghem, perhaps the most individual and at any rate the most imaginative of Dufay's pupils. He was *maestro di cappella* and chaplain to Charles VII in Paris, and died in 1495 at Tours, where he was treasurer of the Abbey of St Martin. He is the great master of the Mass. We have no fewer than seventeen Masses by him, besides motets and a few chansons. He must be regarded as the chief exponent of the peculiar craftsmanship of the Netherland School, which consisted in a preference for canonic writing and the taste for developing from a single melody a polyphonic movement according to prescribed rules (often expressed in the form of a riddle) by placing several different time-signatures at the beginning—a taste that would seem to prefer ingenuity of construction to vital expression or a wealth of melodic invention.



*The 'Old Hall' Manuscript, c. 1480*

Undoubtedly, too, mystical signs and purposes play a part in this sort of craftsmanship; music becomes an edifice of sound, as for example in Ockeghem's 'Deo gratias' for thirty-six voices, which is in canon throughout. With Jacob Obrecht (*b.* at Utrecht in 1430, *d.* at Ferrara in 1505), the most important composer of the third Netherland School, who worked at Cambrai, Bruges and Antwerp and in Italy, this art of construction grew less complex under Southern influence. Obrecht began as an exponent of 'linear counterpoint' but gradually changed to a style of writing in which the texture was clearer and the harmonic basis well-defined. His large output

numbers twenty-four masses, twenty-two motets, a St Matthew Passion for several voices, and a quantity of secular works; his influence was enormous.

Josquin Després was probably born in Hainault about 1450. He is known to have been a singer in the chapel at the court of the Sforzas at Milan, in the Vatican chapel at Rome, and at Cambrai, Modena, possibly Paris, and Ferrara. He died in 1521, a prebendary of Condé. Like Claudio Monteverdi in the seventeenth century, he summed up all the achievements of the fifteenth century and, filling them with new meaning, transmitted them to the sixteenth. His work—thirty Masses, many motets and



*Jean de Ockeghem. b. (?)Termonde, c. 1420; d. Tours, c. 1495. Conducting a choir*

chansons—remained the model for his generation and that which followed it; and so great was his importance that no musician of his day could remain unaffected by it. He increased the number of parts to six, and employed all the constructive skill and craftsmanship of the fifteenth century, not so much for its own sake as to impart an entirely individual expression to it. Not that his music is an illustration of the text; but he seizes the spirit of his subject—earnest, tender, solemn or majestic—with a passionate precision. In him was attained the ideal of ‘Gothic’ church music—universal in style and yet a personal creation. And if we take into account his contemporaries as well—the pensive and gentle Pierre de la Rue, the genial Antoine Brumel, the brilliant Loyset Compère and many others—the high water-mark of genuine church music would seem to be not in Palestrina’s day but already at this time, on the threshold of the Renaissance.

Of the German composers who from the modest beginnings of an indigenous polyphonic style of song-composition—the principal source of this music being the ‘Locheimer Liederbuch’, compiled after the middle of the century—came to throw in their lot with the ‘international’ music of the Netherland School, only two need be mentioned: Heinrich Isaak and Alexander Agricola. Isaak was actually of Flemish origin, and through his activity in Italy—at Ferrara and Florence—and his extensive travels was one of the most ‘international’ composers of the time. But he was a German none the less; and that not merely on account of his service at the



### IOSQVINVS PRATENSIS.

IOSQVINVS Pratenſis Archiſymphonet cum præfectus eſſet ſodalitati Cantorū à Ludouico duodecimo: vt Regem memorat rec

*Josquin des Prés. b. Condé, c. 1445; d. Condé, 1521*

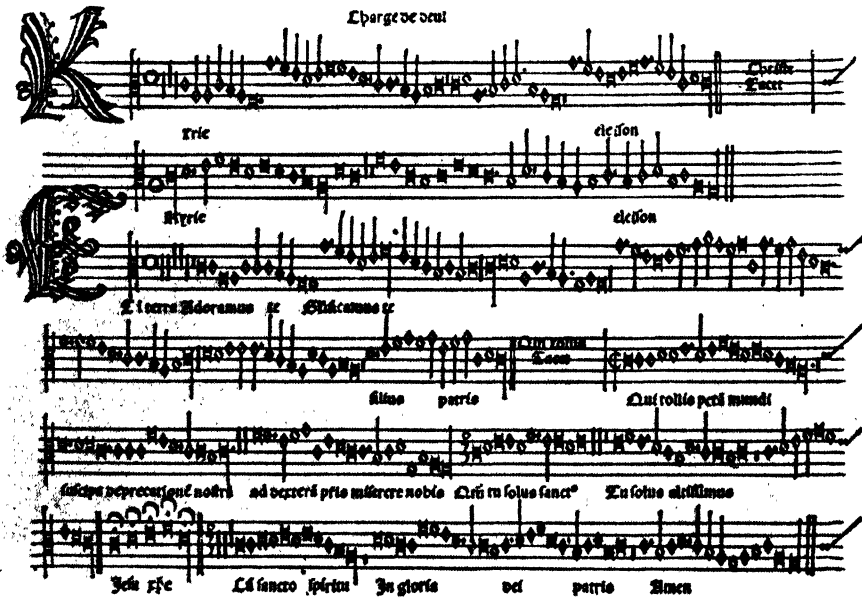
court of Archduke Sigismund at Innsbruck and in the many households of the Emperor Maximilian—at Augsburg, Vienna and Constance—but also by reason of his natural inclinations. He died in 1517 at Florence. He is at home in all styles—in Italian songs, chansons, Masses, and in his great cycle of motets, the ‘Choralis Constantinus’, written for the cathedral at Constance. But he is most himself in German song. His song of farewell, ‘Innsbruck ich muss dich lassen’, with its individual melody in the upper part, was, in spite of its modest scope, an epoch-making piece of music, just as was Mozart’s ‘Veilchen’ two hundred and fifty years later. Alexander Agricola also travelled much. He was *maestro di cappella* at Milan, Cambrai, Mantua (with the Gonzagas) and finally at the court



of Philippe le Beau in Burgundy, in whose service he died at Valladolid, probably in 1506. He too exerted an international influence with his Masses, chansons and Italian songs.

This international influence was made possible by the invention of music-printing round about 1500. This produced as great a revolution in the history of music as book-printing had done in the history of general European culture. A quarter of a century after Gutenberg's first attempts, German and Italian printers produced printed mis-

sals. The decisive step—the printing of the notation of measured music from type—was taken by Ottaviano dei Petrucci of Fossombrone, who worked at Venice and in his native town. His editions of motets, Masses, chansons and 'frottole' put all later examples out of the running by their perfection. Venice, following his example, remained the principal centre for the printing and publishing of polyphonic music. But this 'black art' also spread throughout Europe with amazing rapidity, and nowhere more than in Germany and France.



*A Mass by Heinrich Isaak, printed by Petrucci, Venice, 1506*

## CHAPTER IV

# THE RENAISSANCE

### NEW FORMS

IT is tempting to maintain that the sixteenth century was more than any other period in the development of music a time of transition—a time spent in putting the finishing touches to what had already been done and in preparing the ground for what was yet to come. We find two streams flowing side by side, one ebbing, the other rising; between them there are connexions, both seen and unseen, which give the music of this century its peculiar brilliance and dazzling contrasts. The taste of the last years of the Middle Ages was all in favour of strict imitation, the cultivation of the canon in the simplest and most recondite forms of inversion, diminution and augmentation. The medieval ideal of music based on construction was magnificently realized in the sixteenth century, particularly in the composition of Masses and motets. It is true that certain technical tricks of the preceding period, such as the development of a polyphonic work from a single part, were abandoned. But in strictness of composition and genuine craftsmanship there are a large number of Masses and motets of the sixteenth century that are in no way inferior to the technical achievements of men like Ockeghem and Obrecht. Indeed this art of ingenious and skilful combination enjoyed an astonishing new lease of life at

the end of this century and the beginning of the next.

But at the same time a completely new spirit pervades the music of the sixteenth century. The chief sign of this is the change in a relationship between the vocal and instrumental elements in a musical composition, between the chief melody and the accompanying parts. The period up to about 1520 may be characterized as that of rich and varied cultivation of song accompanied by voices or instruments. But from now on the general structure of vocal composition was controlled by instrumental principles, though the individual constituents were motifs following vocal laws and inspired by poetic fancies. In this way the shape of the new motet and madrigal originated. These forms show that a totally new conception of the unity of a work of art had once more been arrived at, a new sense of relationship between superior and subordinate elements. The old unity of calculated construction was succeeded by a new poetic unity, resulting from the free play of the artist's imagination. A work no longer depended on a given melody running through it to hold it together; the composer shaped and unified it, as it were, with his own hands. For the first time he employed contrast freely, as his text demanded,



Adrian Willaert. b. Bruges, c. 1480; d. Venice, 1562

between homophony and imitation and between few and many voice-parts. Especially in the working of motifs in free imitation he now gained a wonderfully delicate instrument of expression. The music of the fifteenth century had been full of ingenuity and intellectual contrivance; what the sixteenth century contributed was the directly sensuous, poetic expression of an idea. We find these two attitudes most wonderfully reconciled in Bach, who may be said in this sense to have succeeded to an artistic inheritance that was centuries old.

Throughout the century the motet forms the enthralling scene of conflict between the old and new tendencies. There were several subdivisions of the form, treated in

a more or less conservative or progressive style—the psalm-settings fall into the latter category—and of its composers some inclined to old, others to new methods, one of the most impetuous being Orlandus Lassus. But the true outlet for the advanced movement, the arena for all innovation and experiment was the madrigal, in which all the possibilities of expression of that age were first combined. Originating from the fifteenth-century *frottole*—small strophic songs, half-serious in character, still for the most part instrumentally accompanied—its musical pattern at first clearly imitated the form of the sonnet and the canzona. But it did so with purely vocal means, chiefly to begin with in four-part, preferably homophonic songs. At the same time it fundamentally changed its tone; it sought nobility and fastidious refinement to the point of extravagance and sentimental affectation. With Adrian Willaert, however, and especially with his pupil Cipriano de Rore there began a fuller development of its resources. Five voices became the norm, and with this the choral web grew subtler and richer in colour. Homophonic and imitatively handled sections alternated; the chorus was cunningly subdivided to throw individual lines of the poem into relief. Tonality came to be treated more freely and boldly. Rore initiated a chromaticism which later, especially in the compositions of Luca Marenzio and Gesualdo de Venosa, was to lead to extremes of daring—but not based upon clear harmonic perception and hence not fully absorbed by the main stream of development.

Above all, however, the madrigal brought



*Arundel Lumberg*

*Adrian Willaert. 'Musica nova', Venice, 1559*

A SHORT HISTORY OF MUSIC

T E N O R

ISACRI ET SANTI SALMI DI DAVID PROFETA,

Che si Cantano nella Santa Romana Chiesa all' hora  
di Vespero, in Canto Figurato.

Composti da li Eccellentissimi Musici,

CIPRIANO RHORE, E IACHET DA MANTOA.

CON LI SVOI MAGNIFICAT.

A VNO CHORO.

A VERSI A QVATRO VOCI,

Nouamente Posti in Luce & Con Somma  
Diligentia Stampati & Corretti.



Venetis apud Hieronymum Scotum

MDLIII

*Cipriano de Rore and Jachet of Mantua. 'Sacri et santi salmi', Venice, 1554*

about a new conception of the motif as a symbol. The composer sought an expression that would exactly match the poem of his choice. The motif was no longer to be a mere garment, so to speak, for the text; it was to be as precisely expressive as the text itself. The laborious efforts of madrigalists in this direction often betrayed them into a naïve tone-painting in which they lost sight of the work as a whole in the detail; but the close observation of Nature involved was a step towards true poetic expression. Towards the end of the sixteenth century the madrigal became more and more infused with dramatic life, and this despite the number of its voice-parts and a

seemingly inappropriate form. In the numerous dialogues the tendency shows itself conspicuously. Anyone acquainted with the admirable character-studies contained in Monteverdi's madrigals, for instance, will realize from them alone that here we are standing on the threshold of modern art. The madrigal is a wonderful product of vital emancipated music, worthy of the Renaissance. Its clear-cut, individualized structure bears witness to the finest social culture. The diversity, the refinement of its expression, the exhaustive development of its resources by its best exponents are unsurpassed and unsurpassable.

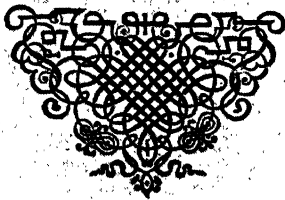
So far, that is to say, as the resources of



*Cipriano de Rore. b. Mechlin or Antwerp, c. 1516; d. Parma, 1565*



DELLI  
MADRIGALI  
A CINQUE VOCI  
DEL  
PRINCIPE DI VENOSA  
LIBRO TERZO.



*Carlo Gesualdo, Prince of Venosa. 'Madrigale a cinque voci', Genoa, 1613*

the medium went; but the limitations of that pure a-cappella art render it essentially different in expression from music of later times. Wherein does its strangeness lie? Not so much in the tonality of the madrigalists—for in the trend during the century towards the major and minor modes those progressions of unrelated chords so charming to our ears occurred less and less frequently—as in a wealth of rhythmical effects, the result of their peculiar conception of independent part-writing. And then, in their different attitude towards construction and dynamic effects. The age of a-cappella music was certainly not ignorant of accumulative and intensifying devices—

at any rate, after part-writing for more than four voices came in, and especially when use was made of multiple choirs—but the art was not yet learnt of intensifying by means of the organization of contrasting sections, of that inner musical intensification attained by the dramatically conceived development of a theme or themes. In the language of exaggeration one might say that an a-cappella piece, provided it reached a satisfying length and preserved unity of tonality, could come to an end where it chose. It was this placidity of movement, this perpetual ebb and flow, this seemingly inexhaustible outpouring of melody, which so captivated the Catholic enthusiasts of the romantic movement in the nineteenth century. But towards the close of the sixteenth century came the time for contrasting themes to appear in the madrigal and with them the first attempts at structure and cumulative effects in the modern sense.

In the course of the century the leadership of the world of music passed to Italy, and the process is clearly to be followed in the history of the madrigal. In the fifteenth century, at the time when she was making her way to cultural predominance, Italy had played a subordinate rôle in musical art. It is significant that Lorenzo de' Medici, when he wished to hear one of his Canzones artistically set to music, had to apply through his organist Antonio Squarcialupi to a Northerner, Guillaume Dufay. In the first half of the sixteenth century the Netherlands still dominated musical Italy. But as time went on the Italians so assimilated the achievements of the foreigner that by the end of the century they represented, with



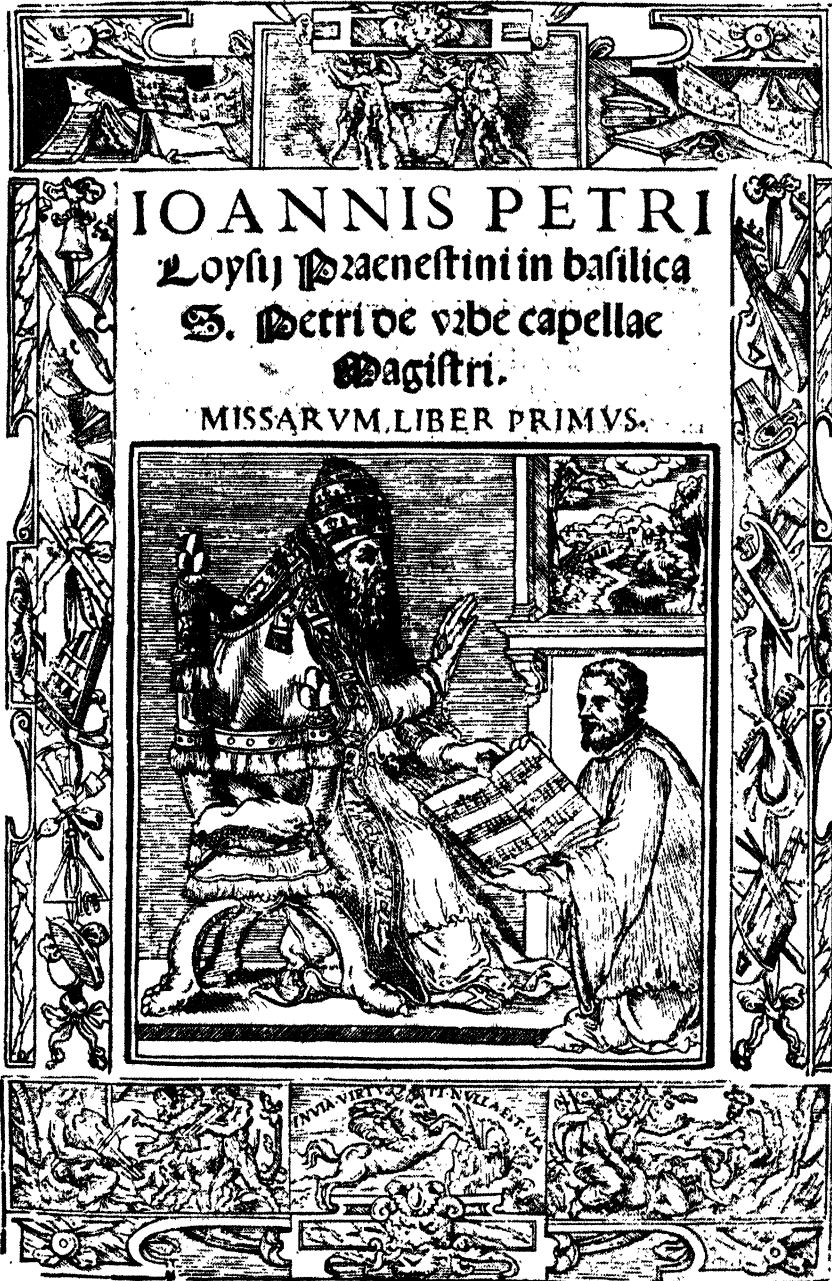
Orlando Lassus. 'Fasciculi aliquot sacrarum cantionum', Nuremberg, 1582

the forms they had cultivated (madrigal, villanella, canzonetta, balletto) and their vocal (double chorus) and instrumental style (ricercar, canzon francese, toccata), the foremost artistic power of the age and set the standard for Germany, England and, to a lesser degree, France. The later Netherlanders no longer set the fashion for Italy; they themselves were already under the siren's spell, which few could resist.

Not that Italy reached this position single-handed. The brilliant artistic attainments of the century were only possible, and are only comprehensible, through the competition of the various musical nations. There was an incessant give-and-take, a perpetual

appropriating and remodelling. The international character of art, the interest in foreign achievements and their ungrudging and swift assimilation—something that later only German music was to carry on, to its prosperity and peril—never flourished so easily and surely as at that time. The principal contribution made by the French was in the form of the chanson—a contribution, light in content while enormous in bulk, of an airy, spritely music, full of pretty babblings and devoted to sentimental love-ditties with a preference for a tone of refined *grivoiserie*. A peculiarity of this literature, which soon came to be imitated everywhere, was programmatic description by

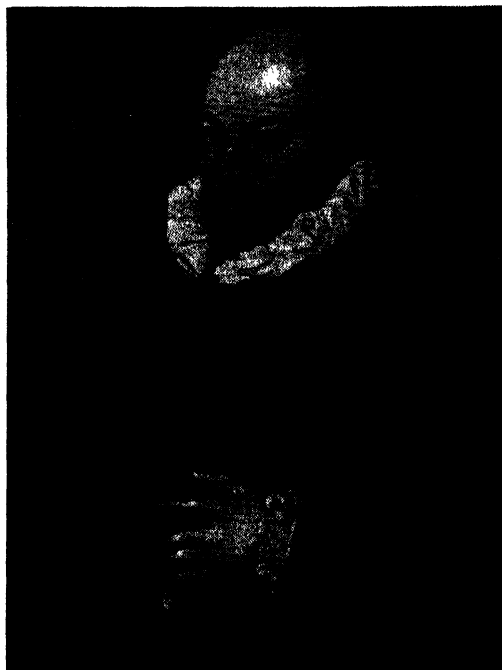




G. P. da Palestrina. b. Palestrina(?), 1525; d. Rome, 1594  
(the composer presenting his 'Missarum liber primus', 1554, to Pope Julius III)

purely vocal means, in the manner of the old Florentine *Caccia*—of street-noises, battle scenes and the warbling of birds—in most cases applied to an onomatopoeic text. Through the simplicity and clarity of its form and themes the *chanson*, transformed into the *canzon francese*, greatly influenced the budding instrumental music. While the *ricercar* was the ancestor of the fugue, the *canzon* was the soil out of which the *sonata* was to grow. The modern variation-form seems to have had its original home in Spain. A development similar in many respects to that of Italy and contemporary with it took place there, political ties connecting that country equally with Italy and the Netherlands. Spain produced a large number of Church composers of the highest rank, peculiarly distinguished by the glowing mysticism of their expression. Here at an early date the variation-form seems to have originated, based upon a recognition of the harmonic foundations of the theme. We possess lute variations by Spanish masters of the 1530's, variations for viola da gamba of the year 1553 and keyboard variations of the same period, especially by the great master Antonio de Cabezon, which do not differ in principle from the towering achievements of Bach, Beethoven and Brahms.

Such was the field of art in the sixteenth century which the teeming composers of the Netherlands, France, England, Germany, Spain and Italy made amazingly productive. Among them were figures of the most pronounced individuality. The pre-eminent representatives of the *a-cappella* period, Giovanni Pierluigi da Palestrina and Orlando Lassus, count among the great men of



Orlando Lassus. b. Mons, 1532(?); d. Munich, 1594

Western civilization — Palestrina as the composer of the ideal type of Church music, pure, purged of all subjectivity, marvellously harmonious, Lassus as the most versatile and vigorously creative master of the motet, madrigal, villanella and *chanson*. These two absorbed and fulfilled the entire musical art of their age. Palestrina (1525-94), who from 1571 was *maestro di cappella* at St Peter's in Rome, was heir to all the traditions of his Roman predecessors and was also steeped in the music of the Netherlands, which he transfused into an expression of utter purity and immaculate, unearthly longing. Lassus (1532-94), a Fleming, from 1556 head of the Munich Court chapel, found the decisive stimulus for his art in the Italian madrigal. Palestrina

NONVS  
SYMPHONIAE

SACRAE

IOANNIS GABRIELII

SERENISS. REIP. VENETIAR. ORGANISTÆ  
IN ECCLESIA DIVI MARCI.

LIBER SECVNDVS.

Scnis, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, & 19. Tam  
vocibus, Quam instrumentis.

Editio Noua.

CVM PRIVILEGIO



SIGNVM

GARDANI

VENETIIS MDCXV.

Ære Bartholomei Magni.

Giovanni Gabrieli. 'Symphonie Sacree', Venice,  
1615

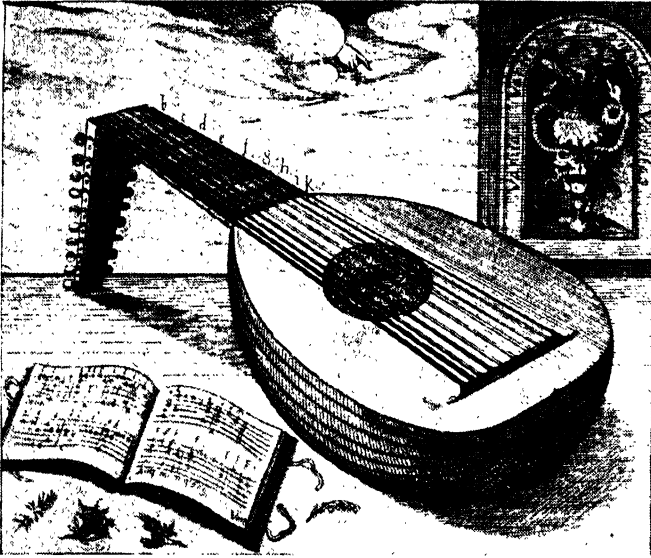
was master of the mass—we possess ninety-three four- to eight-part masses by him—Lassus of the motet (the huge collection of his motets, 'Magnum Opus Musicum', contains over five hundred examples) as also of the madrigal, villanella, chanson and German lied, all of which he mastered like his mother tongue. The two were as equally great in creative power as they were different in nature. The one commanded a serene flow of music, raising it to supernal heights: the other was full of explosive strength, of dramatic vitality controlled with effort. The one was a lover of songful melisma; the other of vigorous declamation. The one was essentially a Church composer (his secular madrigals are of hardly any importance either in his life-work or in the history of the genre); the

other in his madrigals the noble singer of love both sensual and supersensual, in his chansons of sportive *joie de vivre*, and in his villanellas a forerunner of the *Commedia dell' arte*. A veritable Proteus was Lassus with his power of changing his musical style; indeed one of the greatest masters of all time in his virile strength, his unconquerable creative urge, his force of expression, his keen sense of the comic.

While Rome, through Palestrina and his pupils, became more than ever the focus of musical life in Italy, the influence of the powerful Venetian school, through Andrea and Giovanni Gabrieli, uncle and nephew, reached out beyond the frontiers of Italy. Palestrina and Lassus inherited and perfected an art which was nearing its maturity; but with Gabrieli music seems to have burst into fresh bloom. At Venice a style of composition for several choirs prevailed, founded by Willaert and cultivated by his successors Rore, Zarlino, Andrea Gabrieli, Donato and Croce. Instead of single voices the work was built upon the question and answer, the timbre, the echo, the tonal combination of differently constituted choirs of voices and instruments. Giovanni Gabrieli brought this style to the zenith of its effect. He did more: through a new disposition of vocal and instrumental elements and the invention of a new kind of motif, he led the way into untrodden territory. A personality at once conservative and daring, preserving and augmenting, he avoided the mistake that contemporary and later choral composers committed, of relying on the merely passing effect. His music was brilliant, yet profound; festive, yet for the Church—albeit a



Orlando Lasso. 'Patrocinium Musices', Munich, 1575, showing an instrumental concert



*A German lute of 1615*

specifically Venetian church; full of power, romance and wonderfully glowing colour. His 'Symphoniæ Sacræ' (1597 and 1615) was the decisive work of a new trend in choral composition.

With the Gabriellis not only was the way paved for a relation between choir and orchestra that was to remain permanently valid; but also the separation of vocal and instrumental music-making was completed. We have noticed already how purely instrumental laws governed the structure of the new musical product of the sixteenth century. Through the transference of vocal pieces to instruments—to the organ and to ensembles of strings and wood-wind—inherently instrumental forms gradually came to detach themselves from the hitherto undifferentiated pattern. Out of the motet, with its various subdivisions, came the *ricercar* (a fugue with several themes in succession) and the *fantasia* (a fugue with

a single theme), the latter eventually supplanting the *ricercar*, which was the form more cultivated in the sixteenth century. Out of the *chanson* the *canzon francese*, the prototype of the *sonata*, developed. The most valuable elements that the *canzon* adopted from its vocal model were the rhythmic precision and animation of its motifs and the lucid harmonic layout of its form. Concurrent with this was the development of the instrumental dance, which cultivated a wealth of forms, ceasing more and more

to be mere *Gebrauchsmusik*, supplying themes for variations and already at this early period assembling a cycle of dance-forms to create the *suite*. Along with the development of form went the improvement of performance; the pursuit of instrumental style was accompanied by the evolution of the particular technics of the domestic keyboard instruments, of the organ, and of string and wood-wind instruments. The virtuoso appeared, at first on the lute, the favourite instrument of the time. German organ-playing of this time with its conventional 'colourists' had nothing to compare with the Italians' handling of the strict and free forms of *ricercar*, *prelude* and *toccata*—the solo piece par excellence—and still less with the English, whose virginal music, in which they especially cultivated variations and the *toccata*, was, perhaps, a genuine, astonishingly subtle keyboard art. Towards the end of the century the *canzon*

THE RENAISSANCE

PARTHENIA  
or  
THE MAYDENHEAD  
of the first musicke that  
ever was printed for the VIRGINALLS.

COMPOSED  
By three famous Masters: William Byrd, D. John Bull, & Orlando Gibbons.  
Gentlemen of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> most Illustrious Chappell.  
*Dedicated to all the Nobles and Ladies of Honour.*

Insteauen  
by William Holde.  
for  
DORETHIE EUANS.  
Cum  
Priuilegio.



Printed at LONDON by G. Lowe and W. Aspley are to be sold  
at his house in Loathberry

'Parthenia', London, c. 1611

Spiegel der Orgelmacher vñ Organisten allen Stücken vñ Kircke  
 so Orgel halt oder machet lassen bedürftig durch den bedürftim  
 pten vñ Kunstreichen Meyster Amole Schlicker Pfalzorganisten  
 Organist arth vñ vñ vñ Künstliche künstlicher maiestae  
 sonder lüderer befreyung vñ begnadig außgeredt vñ außgange.



*German Church Music and Organ Playing,  
 c. 1510*

francese divides (though not always very sharply) into two separate types—the sonata for wind instruments and the canzona for strings. The former is a fully-scored piece of festal music, the latter chamber music, more lightly scored and more delicately wrought. The one is the ancestor of the symphony and the concerto, the other of the chamber sonata. An important part was played in the whole instrumental art of the sixteenth century by the practice of improvising ornamentation.

For a century and more the Venetian School, with Andrea and Giovanni Gabrieli at its head, exercised a decisive influence on Germany and the Netherlands by their instruction in every branch of music. Andrea

Gabrieli was the teacher of Hans Leo Hassler—and of Jan Peterszoon Sweelinck (1562–1621), who in turn was to hand on the tradition as a whole succession (1564–1612) of considerable German musicians. Giovanni Gabrieli's teaching speaks for itself in the fact that Heinrich Schütz was his pupil. But even had he not had many other pupils, the favourable position of Venice and the magic of his music would still have induced German music to follow in the wake of the Bucintoro.

As in a remote little flower-garden, Germany had until then cultivated her secular song. For long the technique of the form, deriving from the fifteenth century and having little in common with the free



*J. P. Sweelinck: b. Deventer, 1562; d. Amsterdam,  
 1621*

methods of the later age, had remained the same. Following the style of the court song, the words and tunes of which were kept in circulation by wandering minstrels, this German secular song presents a more or less artful interweaving of parts, generally capable of either vocal or instrumental execution, twining around the melody sung by the tenor. After the three-part writing of the Lochcimer Liederbuch these songs were normally composed, at the heyday of their vogue round about 1530, in four or at the most five parts. A simple form, closely matching that of the verse, was preferred to the pretentious architecture of the motet. Two-part counterpoint occurs characteristically, with graceful cadences, a preference for the Lydian mode, and withal a refined and charming rhythmic pattern calculated to enhance the air. Chiefly they were, of course, love-songs; but some were occupational songs,

and sentiments of an edifying, reflective and also political nature found utterance. A special place was taken by drinking songs and convivial ditties, the expression of a robust material enjoyment, culminating in the Quodlibet with its innumerable quips and allusions. The scope of this lyricism, ranging from homely heartiness and tenderness to simple grandeur, shows how wide



*K. H. Spangenberg delin.*

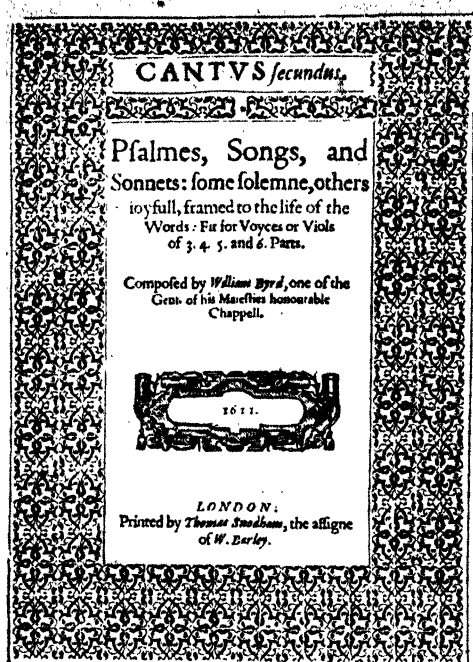
*J. H. Spangenberg delin.*

Thomas Tallis. b. (?) in Leicestershire, c. 1505; d. Greenwich, 1585

William Byrd. b. (?) in Lincoln, 1543; d. Stondon, Essex, 1623

must have been the response it could count upon from the German people and how deep-rooted it was in their hearts. An indication of this is the fact that no composer ever published a collection consisting entirely of his own songs. In contrast to the exclusive and subjective art of the madrigal, these songs represented a sheer gift to the community. They are preserved in a few large



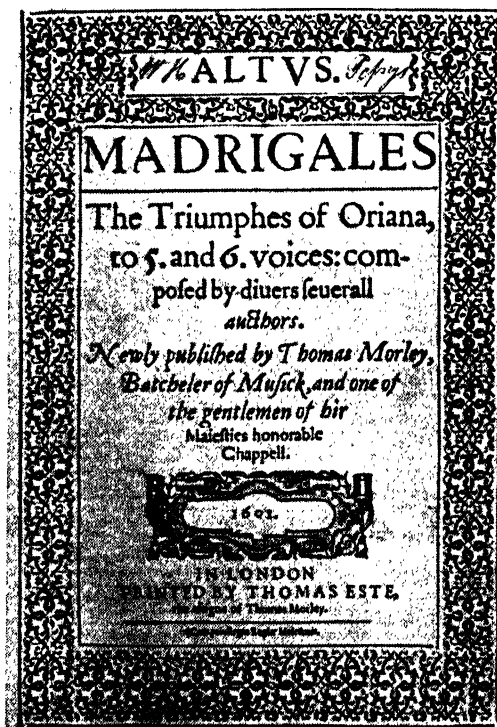


William Byrd. 'Psalmes, Songs and Sonnets', London, 1611

anthologies, the most important of which, containing 380 songs, is the five-volume collection (1539–56) of the art-loving physician Georg Forster. Among a large number of more or less important craftsmen the outstanding composers after Heinrich Isaak—who, true German that he was, hit the nail straight on the head—were Heinrich Finck, Thomas Stoltzer (*d.* 1526), Paul Hofhaimer, organist to the Emperor Maximilian, and above all Arnold von Bruck and the Swiss Ludwig Senfl. The last of these especially was a writer of masterly songs, tender or noble or, again, full of humour. He ranged over the whole gamut of song from the rude and racy to the sublime. The homophonic settings of verses in classical metres

by Hofhaimer and Senfl have a curious place of their own beside these songs. The humanistic movement which in Italy urged men to a vigorous creative renewal of the spirit of antiquity took on in Germany the character of pedantry. In the last thirty years of the century the ground where those blossoms had flowered seemed to dry up. Italian influence and actual importations of Italian music had an easy conquest. A number of artists, indeed, attempted to introduce certain ingredients from the South into the home-made brew, now running so thin; but the attempt failed.

Things were different in England. In the past she had given a new impulse to the whole of European music, and she still



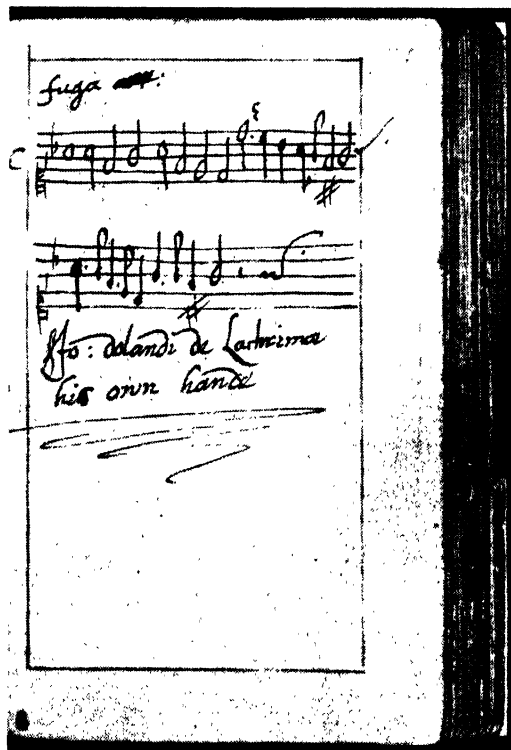
Thomas Morley. 'Triumphes of Oriana', London, 1601



Orlando Gibbons. *b.* Oxford, 1583; *d.* Canterbury, 1625

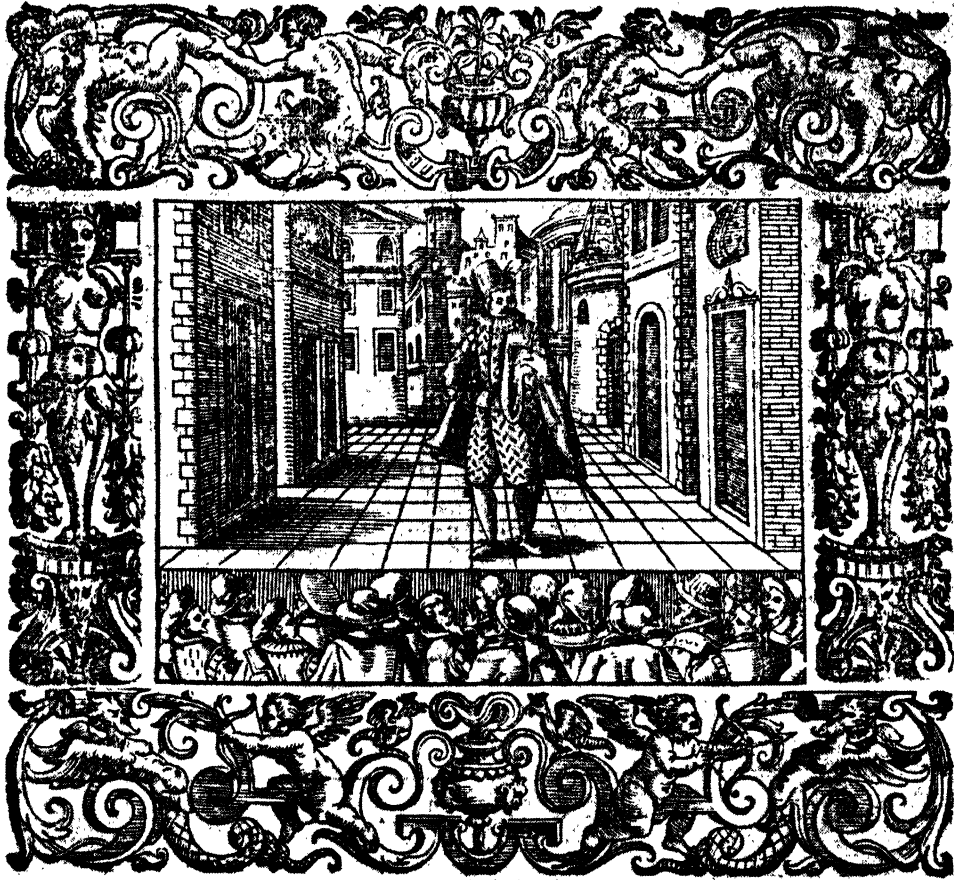
retained her rightful position beside the other nations. She produced such fine ecclesiastical composers as Christopher Tye and Robert White and set beside the grand and noble simplicity of the church music of Thomas Tallis (*d.* 1585) the more personal, more subjective, more imaginative art of William Byrd (*d.* 1623), one of the most distinguished composers of the age. In 1588 the Italian madrigal and canzonetta in their maturity crossed the Alps and came to England, where they continued to flourish in English dress for roughly thirty years. Composers like Morley, Wilbye and Weelkes gave the madrigal an extraordinary increase of intensity and the canzonetta an added grace. Their music was worthy of the

age for which Shakespeare wrote. Between 1588 and 1627 more than forty books of madrigals appeared, ranging from Byrd's 'Psalms, Sonnets and Songs for five voices' to Hilton's 'Airs or Fa-las for three voices'. Among them was Morley's collection 'The Triumphs of Oriana' (1601), the title and arrangement of which were a close imitation of the Italian 'Trionfo di Dori' (1592). The Italian collection having been dedicated to a Venetian lady, 'The Triumphs of Oriana' was published as an act of homage to Queen Elizabeth; it included contributions from twenty-three composers. This close relationship to the various forms of the later Italian madrigal, from two-part songs to settings for double choir, remained



John Dowland. *Autograph, late sixteenth century*





*A scene from Orazio Vecchi's madrigal comedy 'Il Amfiparnasso', Venice, 1597*

composers of the later generation, such as Orlando Gibbons, John Ward and Thomas Tomkins, used themes and thematic contrasts that already foreshadowed, as in the works of the contemporary Italians, the end of music of this type. At the same time the English madrigal—thanks to the devotion to tradition shown by a few music-lovers—was kept alive for over three centuries, and a direct connexion can be traced between it and the vocal music of England at the present day.

Germany, on the other hand, soon gave

up the struggle and preferred to write purely Italian madrigals. The Italian villanella also appeared first in its own tongue, though it took on a superficially German character when it became a 'bauerliedlein'—superficially, since in Italy the three-part villanella was almost entirely dedicated to parody and could be fully appreciated only within the conventions of, and as a contrast to, an exceedingly sophisticated state of culture. A very curious turn was taken when these songs were adapted to suit 'Christian, edifying and moral' sentiments. Later,

through the example of Gastoldi and Vecchi, the canzona for several voices (generally five) and the balletto started their triumphant progress through Germany, where they were to enjoy a career far more lasting and influential than in the country of their origin. The balletto found its way into the dance-suite and also brought fresh vigour—again through the example of Vecchi and Banchieri—to the old Quodlibet, giving rise to a whole literature of choruses and songs of a folk-character which, above all in central and southern Germany, succeeded in maintaining its place in the domestic music of the country with refresh-

ITALIAANSCHĒ  
BALLETTEN.

Met 3 en 6 Stemmen, door  
GIACOMO CASTOLDI & CARAVAGGIO.  
*Op nieuw verrijkt met*  
Verscheide Pastorellen, Cantzonnetten, Mascaraden, &c.  
*Op 3 en 4 Stemmen, uit HÖRATIO VECCHI.*  
Alles in Duitsch vertaalt, met beide de Texten onder mekaar.  
*Nach dem hier by gevooght verordenheit Kon. Ho. Ho.*  
CANTUS.



Amsterdam by Paulus Manhyft. inde Broef-Boegh, in 't Musyckboek. 1657.

G. G. Gastoldi. 'Italiaansche Balletten', Amsterdam, 1557

ing vitality and came to light again at the beginning of the eighteenth century.

The foreign plant was first really acclimatized by Hans Leo Hassler of Nuremberg. Not that he was the first to draw from the wells of Italian art; but the way in which he absorbed that spirit and then brought it forth to new life—the way, for instance, in which in his 'Neue deutsche Liedlein' (1591) he transformed the Italian canzonetta from a parodistic or pseudo-pastoral form into a choral song instinct with more sincere feeling and charm—is a most significant illustration of the relationship of German music to foreign influences. From this point of view Hassler was actually the true fore-runner—in contrast to the numerous composers like Hasse and Graun—of Schütz, Handel and Mozart.

Among Hassler's works special importance attaches to the 'Psalmen und christliche Gesänge' (1607) and the 'Kirchengesänge: Psalmen und geistliche Lieder' (1608). They



H. L. Hassler. b. Nuremberg, 1564; d. Frankfurt on Main, 1612



*North German church music, 1556*

bear witness to the measure in which this Italianate musician was attached to that simple, yet so significant expression of the spirit of the German Reformation, the communal song of the Protestant Church—the chorale. In those stern times the chorale had come to include practically the whole of German song, secular as much as religious, and within the narrowest framework had become crystallized into a form as capable of the profoundest symbolism as it was of surviving the wear-and-tear of generations. In 1523 and in 1526 Luther had provided the Evangelical service with a new liturgical form which, after having at first been in the hands of the clergy and choir, made room, even in the time of the great reformer himself, for increasing participation by the congregation. Instead of their allotted portions of the mass, of matins and of vespers, the members of the congregation now sang hymns before and after the sermon and at the end of the service—hymns derived from all manner of sources. Some

originated from Gregorian chants, others from pre-Reformation sacred folk-songs, while new sources of secular folk-song were always being drawn upon. Among the most notable appropriations from the secular domain were the psalm tunes in use in the Calvinistic Church, arranged in four-part harmony by Claude Goudimel from French chanson melodies and introduced to German congregations in a translation by Ambrosius Lobwasser, a professor at Königsberg (1573).

This priceless treasure of melody was to have an eventful history. In the 'Geystliche



*Martin Luther. b. Eisleben, 1483; d. Eisleben, 1546*

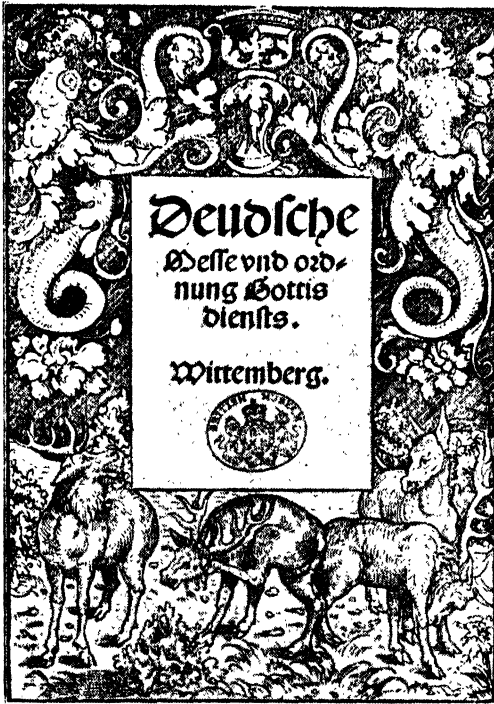
Gesangkbüchleyn' of Johann Walther (1524), Luther's musical adviser, and again in 'Neue deutsche geistliche Gesenge, by Georg Rhaw (1554) and in other less important works, these melodies are artistically arranged with a view both to domestic devotions and to performance by the trained church choir, with the tune mostly in the tenor according to the contemporary German usage. By the end of the century, however, the tune had made its way into the treble. The artist with his personal feelings had effaced himself behind the symbolic act of congregational prayer. Such a treatment of the chorale as is found in Hassler's 'Psalms' (the production of 1607 mentioned above) where the chorale is 'fugweis componiert' (fugally treated) became the exception. The general rule was to leave the chorale untouched—'simpliciter gesetzt'. It is only necessary to recall the highest development of this art—J. S. Bach's chorales—to realize how wide a scope for poetic interpretation was afforded to composers in the harmony and part-writing of this kind of arrangement. The symbolic content of the chorale found its supreme expression in pure instrumental music, in compositions for the organ. Of decisive importance here was the 'Tabulatura nova' of the Halle organist Samuel Scheidt (1624), whose chorale arrangements lead straight to the art of the great Protestant organ school and to the Bach Cantata.



Georg Rhaw. 'Neue Deutsche Geistliche Gesenge',  
Wittenberg, 1544

#### ACCOMPANIED MONODY

Viewed as a whole, the sixteenth century was one of the most extraordinary periods of conflict in the history of music. It is true that, in spite of the open warfare between old and new, in which rival pens played their part, it passed more quietly than similar contentions in later times—those, for example, that raged round Gluck and about the 'New German' school. But the conflict was there none the less. From the beginning of the century every composer had to find his own answer to questions that affected his very essence as an artist; he had to resolve in himself the struggle between homophony and polyphony, between the differing claims of vocal and instrumental expression, between melody as the servant of language and as the vehicle for ornament. Only the greatest masters, the composers of all-embracing genius, found it easy to reconcile the conflicting claims and instinctively hit upon the right solution in every

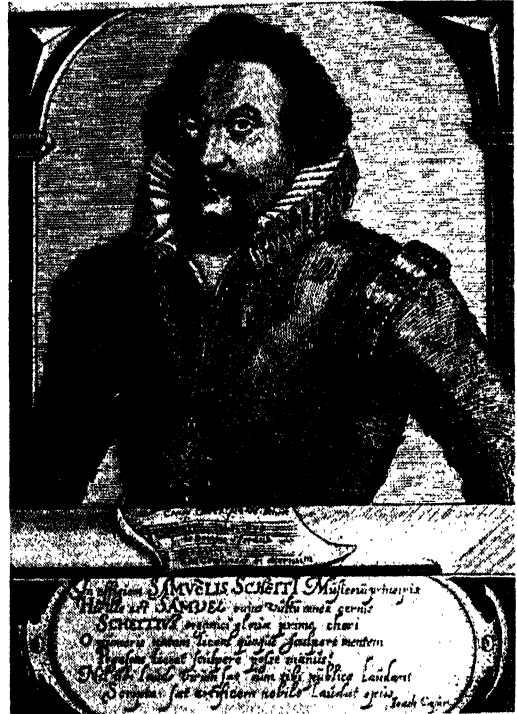


Martin Luther. 'Deutsche Messe', Wittenberg, 1526

branch of music. National divisions were revealed by the different tendencies. The Germans and Netherlanders pursued an ideal of instrumental polyphony, rich in harmonic possibilities—the organ chorale and the fugue—which also had a decisive influence on their vocal writing. The Italians on the other hand, aimed at perfecting instrumental melody, an ideal that pointed the way to the sonata, the concerto and the aria.

One of the practical evidences of this period of conflict and its actual outcome was music-drama or opera, which appeared in its first rough outlines in the last decade of the sixteenth century. Opera involves the co-operation of several arts and many factors. Its origins, therefore, are many and

deeply rooted in the past, and the separate ingredients that conditioned the particular form of the new art are clearly distinguished. This form was determined in the first place by the Italian intermezzo. It was customary in the dramatic performances that took place before the aristocratic audiences of the Italian courts to fill up the entractes with dances and scenic representations, generally taken from classical mythology, the aim being to excite wonder and astonishment by a novel and decorative spectacle. Soon, however, there was a change of method. Scenes of this kind began to be enlivened by action and eventually they were combined together into a dramatic whole in much the same way as later, in the eighteenth century,



Samuel Scheidt. b. Halle, 1587; d. Halle, 1654





*Italian Stage Scene, 1657*

Opera Buffa developed out of the comic intermezzo. An impetus was given to this development by the allegorical festival-play produced to celebrate some event at court, in which words were indispensable. From another starting-point the masquerade tended in the same direction. Its original form, which for long remained the same, was the carnival song—those licentious stanzas which a small troupe of mummers directed at the ladies who were present at the festival. In the second half of the century the tone of these songs became more refined and there was more variety in the invention.

The carnival song began to be treated dramatically and its character became more like that of the intermezzo. Finally, in the course of the century music was used more and more in the choruses and dances of the pastoral drama. This had evolved from dramatic eclogues modelled on those of Theocritus and Virgil. As time went on its popularity increased so much that it became the delight of the whole age. After Tasso's 'Aminta' the masterpiece in this form was Guarini's 'Pastor fido', which was idolized by the fashionable world. It was in the realm of classical mythology and pastoral

drama that opera was launched on its career.

In this hybrid dramatic form there had begun to appear quite early, in addition to choruses and dances, solo songs accompanied by a single instrument—lute, lyra or bass viol—or by more imposing instrumental forces. No one can follow the history of these festival performances in the various capitals—first at Venice and then particularly at Ferrara under the auspices of the Este family and at Florence under the Medici—without noticing how such solo songs borrowed from the forms of vocal music current at the time: the frottola, the canzonetta and above all the madrigal in all



**LE NUOVE  
MUSICHE  
DI GIULIO CACCINI**  
DETTO ROMANO

Musico del Serenissimo Gran Duca di Toscana.

Non viene con forma diligenza ristretto, corretto, & ristampato.



**IN VENETIA**

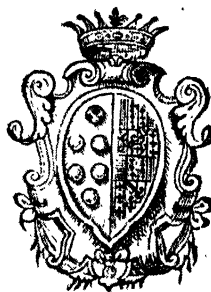
APPRESSO ALESSANDRO RAVERII  
M. D. C. II.

Giulio Caccini. 'Le Nuove musiche', Venice, 1602

**LA DAFNE  
D'OTTAVIO  
RINCCINI**

Rappresentata alla Sereniss. GRAN DUCHESSA  
DI TOSCANA.

Dal Signor Iacopo Corfi.



**IN FIRENZE**  
APPRESSO GIORGIO MARESCOTTI  
M D C  
Con Licenza de' Superiori.

*The Libretto of Peri's 'Dafne', 1600*

its stages of development. Experiments of this kind brought nearer a problem whose solution was to be one of the greatest achievements of the Renaissance—the problem of genuine monody, i.e. melody sung by a single voice with instrumental accompaniment. Composers were at first content to take a madrigal in several parts, which would naturally be polyphonic in conception, and extract a single part, generally the top one, turning it into a vocal solo and fitting the other voices underneath it as instrumental accompanying parts. This solo voice-part was lavishly ornamented by means of coloratura. The weakness of this experiment from the point of view of style

was, however, soon realized. It was seen that the isolation of a single part above the others was arbitrary and artificial, and that vocal embellishment of the solo was superficial and inimical to true expression. In the composition of songs there was a movement towards preserving the distinctness of the poet's words, and in the drama towards a faithful interpretation of emotion.

There was in Florence a dilettante circle, composed of amateurs, poets and musicians, who were inspired by idealistic conceptions of the might and majesty of classical drama. Here the new movement found a formulation of its theoretical principles and an attempt at their practical realization. The demand that the text should be intelligible was not new. The Church had more than once condemned the impropriety of the simultaneous use of different texts in motets and masses. We know, too, what importance the Council of Trent assigned not only to the purely moral but also to the æsthetic question. The council was anxious that the service of God should not be profaned by the introduction of secular songs; but it was equally insistent that sacred words should have their proper value in polyphonic settings.

The members of the Florentine circle went further, rejecting polyphony as detrimental to poetry. The struggle against counterpoint, however, was only the negative part of their programme. Of their positive endeavour—to achieve true accompanied solo song—the first examples, by Vincenzo Galilei, have not survived; but we have a number of later attempts, first among them some small-scale lyrical settings by

LE ISTITVTIONI  
HARMONICHE

DI M. GIOSEFFO ZARLINO DA CHIOGGIA,

Nelle quali olera le materie appartenenti

ALLA MUSICA.

Si trouano dichiarati molti luoghi

di Poeta di Historici, & di Filosofi.

Si sono ad ogni se si poncho di armonia uocale.

È del Maestro della scuola  
di musica di questa Città di Venetia.



Con Privilegio dell' Illustri. Signori di Venetia,  
per anni X

IN VENETIA M D LVIII.

*Gioseffo Zarlino. 'Le Istituzioni harmoniche',  
Venice, 1558*

the Roman composer Giulio Caccini, published in 1602 under the proud title 'Nuove Musiche'. They consist of madrigals and strophic songs composed with a meticulous regard for metrical accuracy. They are not without a certain melodic charm, and the composer, who was himself a singer, was not afraid to introduce vocal ornamentation, although the programme of the new school expressly excluded coloratura. The voice-part is supported by a bass of the simplest type, the realization of the harmony being left for the accompanist to improvise. These miniatures were followed in 1597 by Jacopo Peri's 'Dafne', the first drama to be set to music throughout. With the production at Florence in 1600 of two settings of 'Euridice'

BASSO  
 DI LUCA MARENZIO  
 IL PRIMO LIBRO  
 DE MADRIGALI  
 A Cinque Voci.  
*Novamente ristampati.*



I N V E N T A M D C .

*Appreso l' Herede di Gierolamo Noto.*

Luca Marenzio. 'Il Primo libro de' madrigali',  
 Venice, 1600

by Caccini and Peri and of Emilio Cavaliere's 'Rappresentazione di anima e di corpo', opera and sacred music-drama made their first public appearance.

The origin of opera in æsthetic principles was a complete contradiction of all the conditions that should attend the birth of a genuine creative work of art; but the Florentine movement nevertheless gave a strong impulse to its growth. This was particularly so in the case of the recitative, with which their arguments were principally concerned. It combined originally the elements of both the declamatory and the lyrical styles; but gradually a separation of the two took place, and the result was the emergence of pure declamation and pure

melody—the aria. The other ingredient of the new monody, the basso continuo, seems to have been an assimilation and adaptation of a practice which polyphony had already made its own towards the end of the sixteenth century in another form—the 'basso seguente'. When works for several voices or several choirs—particularly those of the Venetian and Northern Italian school—were performed, it often happened that there was a lack of sufficient vocal and instrumental resources. The organist then had to help things out by accompanying the whole work in unison with the voices. But this meant that he had to have a complete organ score in tablature before him, the writing of which involved the expenditure of much time and trouble and, considering the enormous amount of music used, was practically out of the question. The necessity for something simpler and the increased understanding of harmony led to the adoption of an abbreviated notation—the mere indication of a continuous bass line, going with whatever happened at any moment to be the lowest part, on which the expert reader built up the whole harmonic superstructure of the work. A simple system of figures written under or above the notes showed the deviations from the root positions of common chords, *i.e.* chords of the sixth and six-four, suspensions and discords. The adoption of this system, which remained in force for over 150 years, was made easier by the choral style of the Venetian school, which was generally homophonic in character. It was the *maestro di cappella* at St Mark's, Venice, Gioseffo Zarlino, who laid the foundations of

modern conceptions of harmony in his 'Istituzioni armoniche' and so created a system on which the whole art of continuo-playing depended. In this art the feeling for harmony continued to develop throughout the seventeenth century until it culminated in Bach's miraculous instinct. It has generally been associated with the name of the North Italian composer Lodovico Grossi da Viadana, but it was actually much older; it came into existence quite quietly and unobtrusively, and Viadana only put into writing in a clear if still rather primitive manner the rules for accompanying, and emphasized the necessity for accepting a limited number of parts as a postulate. In his hundred 'Concerti ecclesiastici' for one, two, three and four voices (1602 and 1608) he supplied a kind of practical manifesto which had an important influence.

The basso-continuo radically changed the whole form and shape of a musical composition down to its smallest constituents. Along with music in several parts there was now music in a few parts, in which the voices were brought together in an entirely new relationship, while the bass absorbed, so to speak, what had previously been the middle parts and became in a way an antithesis to the melodic line of the song or the upper parts. By accepting a subordinate and supporting role it set the upper parts free and allowed them to appear in a new guise—as concerted music. Meanwhile the whole social organization of music had changed. Music made its way from the middle-class parlour to the gilded halls of the aristocracy. In the past there had been a general desire to make music, to take part in a concerted

whole. From now onwards the virtuoso was to come to the fore and display his gifts. For reasons both of circumstance and of the nature of the art itself the chief embodiment of the new ideals was found among the composers of the Latin countries.

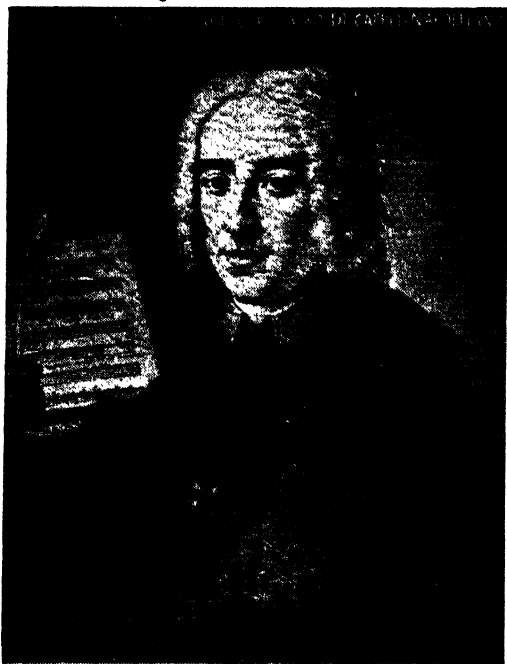
The form that the bass itself was to take now became a problem. In strictly monodic works it was originally completely subservient to the voice-part, which took its expression from the text; it was a mere harmonic foundation in long sustained notes. It remained so, in fact, in *secco* recitative as long as that tradition lasted. But more conservative composers—those of the Roman school, for example—treated the bass vocally and so preserved the original melodic character of the continuo. One of the best and simplest ways in which the contemporary feeling for form could be satisfied consisted in the repetition in the bass of a set theme—either long or short—over which the upper parts could develop freely without, however, sacrificing their dependence on the foundation. This device was known as the *basso ostinato*, its use provided a reinforcement to music in the new concerted style and enabled it to form a properly balanced whole. By the end of the seventeenth century composers had succeeded in the invention of free basses which bore an artistically complete relation to the melodic concerted parts. Once again the bass gradually became a member with equal rights in a polyphonic body, and once it had acquired a melodic character it had sounded its own death-knell. In Bach's 'trios'—the violin and viola da gamba sonatas—the basso-continuo was already



**VMANA COSSA HE LHAVER COM  
PASSIONE A GLIAFFLITTI**

La come che a  
ciaschuna persona sia bene a coloso ma l'ima-  
noem ch'elto liquali già hanno di conforto  
hauuto: e altri: hanno trouato: e uno fra  
liquali se alcuno mai nebbes egli: o non o già  
ne riceuente piacere. lo sono modi quelli p' cio  
che dalla mia prima pioueneza infino a questo  
tempo: oltre modo essendo stato acceso da aldi  
fimo & nobile amore forte più affai: ch'ella mia

bassa conditione non parche narràdolo lo si richiedesse: quantunq' dop  
po coloro che di scherei erano: e alla cui noticia puenne: ne fu li lodato  
to & da molto più reputato. Non adueno mi fu egli di gradissima festa  
a soffrire: certo no p' crudelta della donna amata: ma p' sporchio amore  
nella mente cōcepito da pocho regolato appetire. li quale peio a citano  
regolato cōuenenole termine mi lascia contento stare. più di nata che di



*Alessandro Scarlatti. b. Palermo, 1660; d. Naples, 1725*

forced to occupy an insignificant place; and in the chamber and orchestral music of the pre-Haydn period it disappeared forever.

A particularly important part in the reformation of melodic structure was played by the vocal and instrumental art of the seventeenth century. The old vocal and instrumental embellishments were purely ornamental, the mere trappings of the essential melody; they were rarely expressive. In the new period, up to the end of the eighteenth century, the delight in improvised ornament was as active as ever, but a good deal of the ornamentation became stylized, without serious detriment to the basic melody. The best and most individual madrigal composers, however—Marenzio, Monteverdi and others—had already rescued their melodies from the caprice of

singers (as Bach did later in a higher degree) and devoted their finest craftsmanship to providing their own embellishments; and in the same way the seventeenth century exerted itself to render its ornamentation expressive and to enlist melody and decorative invention under the same banner. The continued endeavour to achieve passionate utterance, sharp characterization and vivid tone-painting played a vital part in originating the modern motif.

These were the factors that gave the new style of composition its general character in the seventeenth century. There was no fundamental difference between sacred concerted music, secular chamber music (the cantata and duet), opera, oratorio or even instrumental chamber music. The ideal that inspired all these forms was song; and in this sense their development ran on identical lines. But the actual shapes they took were quite distinct. We may begin with the chamber cantata, since by its very nature it remained the most independent of external circumstances and, in addition to affording the purest example of the development of the seventeenth century idea of form, provided composers with an experimental training-ground and the necessary equipment for opera and oratorio.

The cantata was a lyrical form in dramatic shape, a unique phenomenon akin to the modern ballad. Its particular manifestations showed no variety or individuality; as a form it was stereotyped and monotonous. Its natural emotion was not deep or heartfelt but was expressed by superficial ornamentation. The pastorale, in its progress from the idyllic to the pathetic, remained

its principal sphere, just as on the literary side it derived from the idylls of Theocritus and Virgil and Ovid's 'Heroides'. The madrigal, both sacred and secular, had long before adopted a kind of narrative framework—later to be established as recitative—to which prominence was usually given by a homophonic treatment of the voices. Oddly enough, it was quite a long time before monody incorporated in the cantata the forms that had been at its disposal from the very first (the recitative-like madrigal and the air) or rather before it extracted from recitative the element of pure song and gradually made it independent. A characteristic of the cantata was the complete subordination of poetry to music, which quickly became established. In the sixteenth century the composer had regarded himself as the interpreter of the poet. Petrarch, Boccaccio, Sannazar and even Dante enjoyed a new popularity, thanks to the musicians; and Ariosto and Tasso were glorified in the settings of their verse. In monodic settings, too, the Florentines at least took poetry seriously. Caccini's musicianship was too weak to achieve anything more than conventional sentiment in the madrigal and modest grace in the song-form. But a whole group of composers, with Monteverdi as their leader, aimed at truth and accuracy in the expression of emotion and did not shrink from employing any audacities of harmony or melody to attain their end.

The pursuit of this lofty ideal still required a definite poetic stimulus. But it was of short duration. Composers soon diverted their energies into a channel of sensuously



J. A. Hasse. *b. nr. Hamburg, 1699; d. Venice, 1783*

beautiful melody, and for that they needed poetry that fitted most closely the musical forms they had won for their own. There arose an entirely new kind of *poesia per musica*, which lost in invention and content what it gained in flexibility and smoothness. This disjointed and unsound relationship between the sister arts at first gave the Italians the advantage, but later led to the impoverishment of their musical lyric and created that gap between folk-song and art-song which in German music was to be filled so wonderfully by the Lied. In Italy, however, this relationship was a practical necessity, since only on these lines was it possible to ensure normality in harmony





*English Chamber Performance of Opera Songs,  
c. 1725*

and melody. In accordance, one might say, with the natural law of the conservation of energy, composers of cantatas and operas in the seventeenth century set aside conscious obedience to theoretical principles and devoted all their energies to writing music that obeyed its own laws.

The task that faced them was extraordinary and unprecedented. It was possible, of course, to borrow from folk-song and popular melody, and this was done to a greater or less degree. But on the whole the tendency was to move away from popular influences. The object was to establish quite independently the laws of pure monody

from the structure of short themes to their combination in an elaborately articulated whole. The example of Florence was followed by Rome, where men like Mario Savioni, Luigi Rossi, Marc' Antonio Cesti and particularly Giacomo Carissimi cultivated the cantata with passionate devotion and enlarged its possibilities of expression by giving greater scope to pathos, grace and humour—the last a speciality of the Roman school. Nowhere does the cantata show such abundant variety of form as in the work of the Roman composers, such versatility in the combination of arioso and recitative, such natural ease and fluency of style. The Rondo Cantata, however, in which there was a lively treatment of a recurring arioso section, may be regarded as the favourite form. Contemporary with the Roman school of cantata composers and succeeding them were the masters of Venice and Northern Italy, led by Bologna. The cantata with instrumental accompaniment owed its typical form, after much tentative experiment, to Alessandro Stradella of Modena; but the classical representative of the cantata's maturity in all its various forms and its most prolific composer was the Neapolitan Alessandro Scarlatti, who has left us in his cantatas an inexhaustible treasure of melodic invention and sensuous beauty. To him is due the definitive shape of the da-capo aria. In this form the claims of poetry are reduced to the most modest scale, so that music may as far as possible remain its own master and pursue its course unchecked. What the aria demanded of its text was simply the set form—principal section, middle section, repetition of

principal section—a definite emotion, and nothing more unless it was a suggestion for a picturesque accompaniment, the object being to produce a kind of vocal sonata. In a later age, when naturalism was the vogue, it may have been regarded as a mistake that this vocal sonata should have been transplanted into opera; but the grandeur, richness and fruitful possibilities of the form itself were demonstrated a hundred times over by Bach, Handel, Jommelli, Hasse and Mozart.

The new style also took possession of the motet, which became the sacred cantata. If monody may be said to have brought emancipation to secular song, it threatened church music with a danger of which musicians of the time were fully aware. The



*Claudio Monteverdi. b. Cremona, 1567;  
d. Venice, 1643*



*Claudio Monteverdi. 'Orfeo', 1615*

evidence of that is the mass of church music in the old style, written by composers who were otherwise quite 'modern'; and yet the right note was not truly struck. The sixteenth century tradition survived most vigorously and most naturally at Rome, but Venetian composers like Antonio Lotti and Neapolitans like Alessandro Scarlatti also took a delight in conscious archaism. The age of innocence of a-cappella music, however, was over. The sacred cantata held the field and adapted itself readily enough, after a short florescence of monodic and concerted motets, to the forms of secular songs; developing a tendency to abandon Biblical texts in favour of a fulsome religious poetry in the baroque manner. It was in the sacred cantata that the new relationship between vocal and instrumental parts developed and became firmly established. The concerted treatment of the parts in instrumental

chamber music became the model for a similar treatment of vocal and instrumental parts in combination. In place of the merely ornamental contrasts of separate choirs to be found in earlier music there prevailed from now on an ingenious and imaginative alternation of voices and instruments. The instrument anticipates the theme of the voice-part or develops it still further, and the parts interchange or combine with the utmost freedom and ease. Side by side with the creation of the small cantata came the establishment of the form on a large scale. The ornate Venetian church music became divided up into choruses and solo songs and readily embraced the new forms; the result was the 'grand cantata' in which the claims of music involved the subjection even of the venerable text of the Mass itself. It was not in borrowed forms or in the use of instruments that the secularization of church music lay, but in the change of standpoint, the naked subjectivity, the all-too-personal relation of the worshipper to the Deity. In the music of the sixteenth century God's answer to prayer had been implicit in the supplication, but now the suppliant himself appeared upon the scene.

The development of opera ran on similar lines to that of the cantata, except that here the conflicting claims of drama and music naturally could never be completely reconciled. In individual cases drama continually succeeded in re-establishing its rights, but unfortunately this was generally done by a vaguely idealistic re-creation of Greek tragedy; the approach was literary and hence one-sided, and there was no proper consideration of the part that music had a

right to play. How insignificant in effect the supposed realization of such ideals could be was shown by the first phase of the new form's development. For all that its earliest exponents did to bring it to life, Florentine opera would have remained a bloodless phantom, a merely temporary adjunct to the festivities of the Grand Duke's court, had not a composer of genius, Claudio Monteverdi, at that time *maestro di cappella* to the Duke of Mantua, taken it in hand. The general structure of early opera was based on an entirely false conception, the engineer, the scene-painter and the dancer being considered more important than the poet or the musician. In his 'Orfeo', produced at Mantua in 1607, Monteverdi showed for the first time that within this framework it was possible to create a living, passionate, intensely dramatic music. For the first time he allowed the instruments to speak a language of their own—though it is a mistake to assert that he already used them in the modern manner. He won a place in the drama for instrumental music which it was to lose all too soon; and if the use he made of it was concentrated, it was for that reason all the more brilliant.

'Arianna' (1608) seems to have made an even deeper impression than 'Orfeo'. All that has survived is the famous Lament of the deserted heroine, which for many years was accepted as a model of its kind—music of immortal verity and loveliness. The operas that followed 'Arianna' are completely lost, with the exception of two works of the great master's old age—he had since become *maestro di cappella* at St Mark's, Venice (1613)—which reveal a ripe



Alessandro Scarlatti. Autograph of 'Griselda', 1721

mastery of characterization, melody and form. Through all Monteverdi's work runs the dramatic impulse; its quickening fire is felt in his a-cappella madrigals and imparts a glow to the masterpieces of subjective inspiration that he wrote for church and chamber. In his 'Combattimento di Tancredi e Clorinda', performed in 1624, he produced the first example of a genuine secular oratorio, though he was not actively concerned with the creation of a new form and indeed only considered the single detail of a new device of instrumentation worth mentioning. In his lifetime Monteverdi drew upon himself that hatred of the reactionaries which is the lot of genius. Even to-day no one can remain indifferent to the

disturbing stimulus of his music. He is the greatest representative of a period of revolution in which the very foundations of tradition were shaken.

Florentine opera did not last long; and for that both circumstances and its own nature were responsible. It early won occasional acceptance in a number of Italian cities; but its first home that could in any sense be called permanent was in the cardinals' palaces in Rome. Here several important works were produced, in which the tendency was to abandon dramatic expression in favour of purely lyrical melody, under the powerful influence of the Roman cantata. Some of the librettos written by Giulio Rospigliosi, poet and later Pope,



ACTE SECOND

Le Théâtre Represente la Feste Enchantée de l'Amour au milieu d'une Forêt

Scene Premiere

Angélique, Tomàs, Suite d'Angélique



J. B. Lulli. A scene from 'Roland', first produced 1676

have a particular historical importance, since they provided for the first time a contrast to the sentimental pathos of the principal characters in the figures of low comedy, such as the page and nurse. This mixture of styles was popular throughout the seventeenth century, until antiquarian purism stepped in and restored to Opera Seria its exclusively pathetic character.

A Roman was the author of these works, and it was mostly Roman singers who supplied the opera for the first permanent theatre at Venice (1637). For many years after that Venice remained the principal

home of opera in Italy, and for that matter in Europe. At first it set an example to other cities and produced its own operas; later, from the beginning of the eighteenth century, it continued, with its large number of public theatres, to act as a consumer. Venetian opera swung away more and more from the ideas of the first inventors of the form. Francesco Cavalli, a pupil of Monteverdi, was the most influential of the Venetian composers. He was a master of subtle characterization, who knew how to write recitative full of life and interest and succeeded in producing scenes that were genuinely dramatic and theatrically effective. But in the tender and appealing work of the Roman composer Marc' Antonio Cesti, arioso was introduced into opera for its own

sake. The solemn overture of Monteverdi and Cavalli was succeeded by the vivid, graphic, descriptive Sinfonia of about 1660, to be followed in turn by the empty formality of the Sinfonia of Venetian opera in its decline. The chorus of the Florentine operas became reduced to the insignificant interjections of supernumerary characters and often disappeared completely. Simple pastoral or mythological subjects were replaced by heroic or historical themes, in which the whole of ancient and early medieval history was garbled to provide an excuse for love-intrigues. The librettist

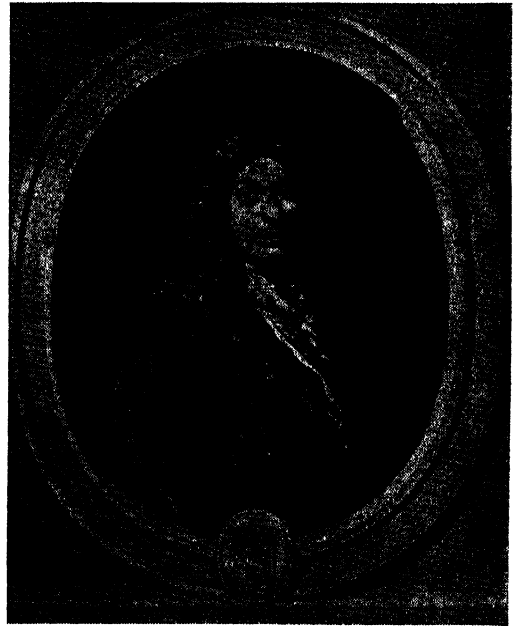


Henry Purcell. *b. London, 1659; d. London, 1695*

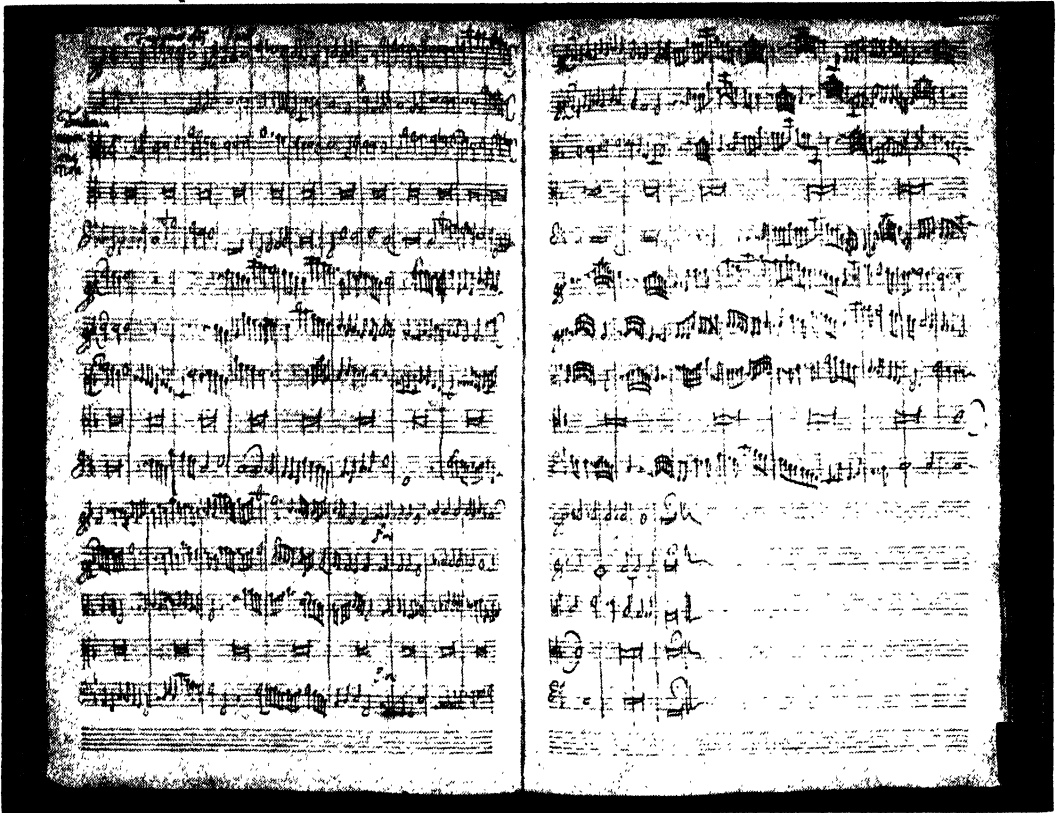
became the obsequious slave, first of the stage engineer and then of the composer, while the composer was more and more reduced to the rôle of an obliging purveyor of material for the castrato and the prima-donna. Opera developed into a succession of arias, the business of simulating some dramatic connexion between them being relegated to recitative. A certain number of situations became stereotyped—scenes of eavesdropping, mistakes of identity, outbursts of jealousy, dreams and conjurations—and these continually offered a challenge to the skill of rival composers. The librettist's technique consisted in involving half a dozen pairs of lovers, with the addition of an odd supernumerary, in all sorts of entanglements and complications and then reconciling them all at the end. Thus opera, considered as an artistic whole, degenerated

gradually into an æsthetic monstrosity, and as time went on the objections to which it laid itself open grew stronger. But for all that, its composers achieved wonders, not merely from the musical but also from the dramatic point of view. To appreciate the achievement of baroque opera we must take the framework of its style for granted, admitting as inevitable in the circumstances the large part played by convention.

This proviso is particularly necessary in the case of the Neapolitan school, which with its founder Francesco Provenzale and especially with its leader Alessandro Scarlatti (1660–1726) was to break the Venetian influence. Scarlatti's dramatic talent was slight, but he was a great composer with an inexhaustible fount of melody and he was responsible for finally establishing the form of the operatic aria, to which he contributed an increasing refinement of ornamentation



J. B. Lulli. *b. Florence, 1632; d. Paris, 1687*



Henry Purcell. Autograph of 'Fantasia on one note', c. 1680

and elaborate instrumental accompaniment. He marks the point of departure for the development of opera in the eighteenth century.

Opera, as represented by the style of the Venetian school, enjoyed a triumphal progress throughout Europe. France and Germany pursued different paths, in accordance with their different political circumstances. In France, Italian opera was at first imported without great attempt at adaptation or reconstruction. Cardinal Mazarin invited an Italian opera company to perform in Paris in 1645. This incursion was followed by others; and in the 1660's Paris made the acquaintance of two important works by

Francesco Cavalli. Meanwhile, however, the poet Perrin and the composer Cambert, cunningly using the Ballet de Cour as a basis, had attempted to create a truly national opera; their 'Pomone' (1671) was performed at the opening of the newly founded 'Académie de musique' which, significantly enough, had been preceded about ten years earlier by a royal 'Académie de danse'. Circumstances were against Perrin and Cambert and their enterprise failed. A successor arose who took over their work with better fortune. This was Giambattista Lulli, a Florentine, who basked in the gracious favour of the 'Roi Soleil', and created the French heroic opera, with

its two guiding stars—Love and Glory. In the form that he originated, with its magnificent array of dances and choruses, its characteristic and more richly accompanied recitative, the concise melodic style of its arioso and—most important of all—its continued, if only partial, adherence to a certain principle of dramatic propriety, it remained until the time of Gluck the shield and buckler of tradition and the repository of a jealously guarded style.

In England, too, opera began to take root in the court masques, a survival and an imitation of the festival performances that were all the rage in Renaissance Italy, in which originally music had only the modest task of supplying choral songs and accompaniments to the dances. The interpolation in Shakespeare's 'Tempest' is a typical masque of the period. From these masques there developed in the course of the seventeenth century a number of hybrid productions akin to opera, among them a work that was, allegedly, sung throughout—'The Siege of Rhodes' (1656), the text of which was by Sir William Davenant. It is difficult to say how it came about that England, where the door was always open to Italian influences, never created a national opera, as did Italy herself, France and eventually Germany. The reason may not be so much a matter of history as of psychology and climate; it is to be found, perhaps, in the difference between the Italian and the English attitude towards music. Music is not the natural means of expression for the Englishman to the same extent that it is for the Italian. He regards it as something higher than a mere vehicle of the emotions and

passions; and this explains why in England music remained in a subordinate position to drama. England produced instrumental pieces and ballets, and created 'supernatural' and 'romantic' scenes; but on the whole English opera remained a 'Singspiel', a spoken play with an abundance of complementary music. The actual musical life of England was to be found in the music that amateurs made for themselves in the home. Here the 'fancy' was cultivated long after the rest of Europe had adopted the Italian concerted style and the virtuoso trio and solo sonata. The Fancy, a polyphonic form written for the viol consort, had an intimate charm and attraction comparable only with that of the chamber music of the eighteenth century. Henry Purcell (1659-95), who wrote music for the theatre as well as an actual opera, was the last important creative force of a country which, as far as music was concerned, has since depended on foreign importations. Purcell may be compared to some extent with Mozart, not only on account of his tragically short career but also because of the ease with which he assimilated foreign styles. He wrote trio sonatas in the Italian style; but in the strength of their melodic line they are still typically English, and so are his Fancies with their daring harmonic progressions. Beside his effective church music, which culminates in his magnificent *Te Deum*, his miniature opera 'Dido and Æneas' stands on a pinnacle by itself, a model of pure and profound expression achieved by the most modest means.

In Germany the first growth of a national opera was nipped in the bud. Heinrich



Schütz wrote for the Saxon Court in 1627 the first opera in German, 'Dafne', which was undoubtedly in the spirit of Monteverdi. Later a number of German courts tried the experiment of opera in the vernacular, not so much in South Germany and Austria, where Munich and Vienna both remained faithful to Italian opera, as in the Centre and the North—at Brunswick, Hanover and Weissenfels. At Brunswick there were two periods when German opera flourished, the second associated with a distinguished name, Georg Kaspar Schürmann. Dresden soon deserted to Italian opera and remained faithful to it longer than any other German city. The glories of Leipzig, Nuremberg and Augsburg pale beside those of Hamburg, where for fifty years an operatic tradition was kept alive which throws a melancholy light on the state of affairs in Germany at the time. There was a vague idea prevalent that it was the function of opera to be ennobling; and hence when the Hamburg opera was founded in 1678 its secondary object was to provide edification and the first works produced were on Biblical subjects. Soon there was a serious decline. The operas became extremely crude and lost all consistency of style. German and Italian texts were combined without scruple or hesitation, and all sense of artistic and moral responsibility disappeared. Both by the choice of language and by the spirit in which the librettists approached their task German opera was doomed to failure. A producer of genius like the talented and enterprising Johann Sigismund Kusser could lend the tottering structure for a short time the semblance of

solidity; and a master of melody and colour like Reinhard Keiser was able to support it for several years. But in the end it was submerged and overwhelmed by the tide of foreign affectation. We shall see later how modest were the origins of truly national German opera, when at last the time was ripe for it.

For much the same reasons German song also deteriorated. The monodic movement from Italy might have led to a new growth of lyrical art if German poetry had been ready for it; but by the time it was able to provide musicians with the texts they wanted for the madrigal and the cantata the opportunity had passed. In the meantime the Thuringian composer Heinrich Albert made tentative efforts to find suitable melodies for the strophic verses of the Königsberg poets; and what he aimed at and seldom achieved was brought to fulfilment by a master of song, Adam Krieger. In these songs, which were adopted by students all over Germany, a wide range of emotions—from exuberant heartiness to youthful melancholy—found genuine and authentic expression. In the time of Albert and Krieger and later a whole mass of utterly inferior ditties also became popular throughout the country. Their vogue did not, however, prevent musicians from feeling a pronounced contempt for strophic song—the basis of the Lied; indeed it makes such an attitude comprehensible. German song declined still further at the end of the century with the growing tendency to adapt words to existing dance-tunes and instrumental melodies, generally of fashionable French origin. The aria and the cantata



Heinrich Albert. 'Arien', Königsberg, 1650



Girolamo Frescobaldi. 'Toccate d'intavolatura', Rome, 1637

choked the growth of the lied. Only German sacred song, which found in Paul Gerhardt a true poet, was still the inspiration of genuinely musical talent.

#### INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY

In instrumental music monody achieved an even more decisive victory of new over old than in vocal music. The disintegration that followed its introduction was more severe and the new edifice that it erected more striking. The culminating point, to which

the development of the sixteenth century had led up, was Giovanni Gabrieli's orchestral sonata, the basis of which was a concerted antiphony of contrasted masses of tone—such as strings and brass—and the contrast between sections consisting of contrapuntal imitation for the finer-toned instruments and homophonic movements built up on mighty pillars of sound, in which dance rhythms were often employed and a strongly accented triple time was favoured. This use of sonorous tutti in the manner of a ritornello was adopted by G. Gabrieli from the 'Canzon francese'. A number of Venetian and North Italian composers cultivated this type of orchestral canzon for a short time; but it soon lost its independent existence as an instrumental form and dwindled to the short introduction to the grand cantata. Its grave and solemn movement and its use of the wind ensemble had a particular attraction for the German composers of church music

and cantatas.

In Italy, however, it took on a new lease of life before it was finally submerged. The contrasted upper parts of the two concerted groups—a violin and a cornet, for example—were embroidered in the most elaborate fashion with ornaments, runs, trills and arpeggios. The virtuoso advanced his claim, and an individual, subjective character began to appear in music for festivals and state occasions. In this way there came into existence quite early, as if by accident, the primitive form of the concerto grosso in

which, between the unvarying repetitions of a ritornello for the tutti, individual instruments indulged in virtuosity to their heart's content. This form, the combination of so-called 'symphonies' with solo improvisations, was undoubtedly much cultivated in Venice and Rome. Its weakness was that in spite of all its simplicity it lacked unity, the unity that could be achieved only by thematic association and coherence of ideas. No wonder then that the Venetian orchestral *sinfonia* disappeared completely and carried on, so to speak, an underground existence until it finally came to light again at the end of the seventeenth century at Rome, Bologna and Modena—cities that boasted particularly flourishing musical academies. By this time it was able to take advantage of the new clarification of harmonic relationships and the extraordinary progress in the conception of writing for instruments that had been made in chamber music. The *concerto grosso* had appeared.

This development had begun with the 'Canzon francese' and continued in an uninterrupted straight line to the creation of modern sonata-form, the last and most mature form of pure instrumental music. The 'Canzon francese' already contained the undeveloped germs of what was to come; in it the contrasts of time, tempo and texture which were essential for an organically constructed instrumental composition were already foreshadowed. The appearance of the basso-continuo helped to sharpen



*Girolamo Frescobaldi. b. Ferrara, 1583; d. Rome, 1643*

these contrasts. At first, until about 1620, the canzon regarded the continuo with suspicion, anxious as it was to avoid being compelled to surrender its essentially polyphonic character. Already, however, at this stage the component parts of the work became detached and took the form of separate, contrasted movements. The result was a chequered pattern, made up of short fughetta-like sections, dance-rhythms and homophonic movements characterized by gentle melancholy or boisterous energy. 'Capriccio' is the proper name for this



*A Concerto of the early eighteenth century*

transitional form, which continued for a long time to influence the composition of solo chamber music and concerted works for a few instruments. It was in this shape that the canzon was taken over by Frescobaldi. He was not, however, content with it as it stood; he felt a need for binding together at least the principal movements of this complex whole by means of thematic unity. In his works the theme of the first movement undergoes ingenious transformations, which are quite often barely recognizable, with different time-signatures and increasingly rapid tempos; while between the principal movements come free fantasias, serving as connecting links. Fresco-

baldi's use of this principle of variation, which runs through the whole of the instrumental music of the seventeenth century, had a particular influence on the German sonata composers. To the neutral character of his thematic material, which did not appeal to the newly awakened taste for virtuosity, we must attribute the fact that his immediate influence made itself felt more strongly in compositions for clavier and organ than in chamber music. Also the type of canzon that aimed at developing the latent possibilities of a single theme and led eventually to Bach's fugue was soon relegated entirely to clavier music; it was incompatible with the art of the continuo.

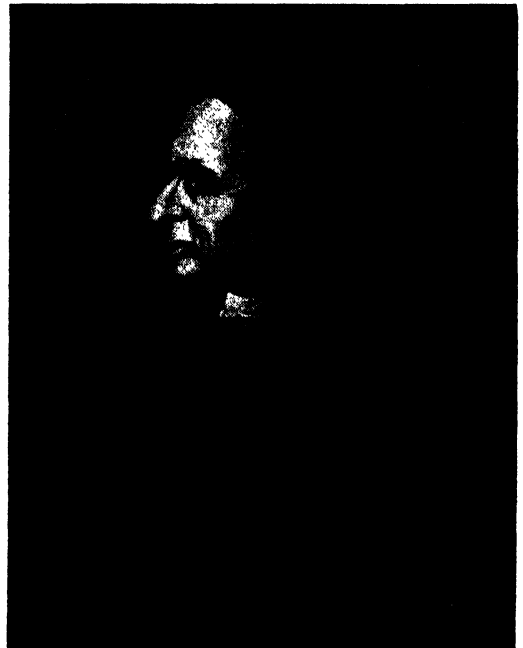
At the same time the sonata for a few instruments with continuo never entirely gave up imitative treatment, and its principal movement always implied a grateful acknowledgement of its direct descent from the 'Canzon francese'. It had, in fact, taken over the lively imitations of the canzon and adapted them to new conditions. Not of course that the old polyphony in four, five or even six parts disappeared completely even in the Italian continuo sonata of the seventeenth century. The natural result of a greater number of parts was a return to concerted music with contrasted groups of instruments, which paved the way for the concerto-grosso. However, the principal effect the continuo had was to reduce the number of instrumental parts in the canzon. The small vocal concerto provided the model for the instrumental duet, which very soon secured general acceptance; it was usually written for two violins with continuo accompaniment, the bass being

reinforced by another string instrument, the viola da gamba or the violoncello. In this trio sonata of the seventeenth century the strings gradually ousted the wind. All this sonata literature is eminently violin music and it displays a very specific invention, which as time goes on grows more intense and purer, inspired by the particular charm of the instrument. The contrasts of legato and spiccato are in themselves almost a sufficient guide to the structural divisions of the sonata. The string family became the normal instrumental body and in the relation between strings and wind we have the first sign of their arrangement in the modern orchestra.

In addition to these forms, which had their origin in the canzon, the sonata also adopted new ones whose principles were dictated by the continuo: improvisation and variation. The continuo gave free rein to virtuosity. Over long-sustained, slowly moving notes in the bass the sequence held high festival, sometimes to the point of riotous excess, content at first with empty formulæ but gradually developing a more supple type of figuration. Over a constantly repeated figure in the bass—the ostinato—composers erected an elaborate edifice of variations, designed to afford opportunities for a progressive show of virtuosity, the favourite culmination being a transformation to rapid triple time. Such methods soon made it possible to blend the set of variations with the variations-suite. The bass themes of variations of this kind, which were originally songs or dance-tunes, were reduced to pregnant harmonic formulæ, thus forcing the concerted parts to be more

concise and laying on them a heavier artistic responsibility. At the end of the century the favourite type of variation form was the chaconne, founded on a bass theme in triple time and fixed rhythm.

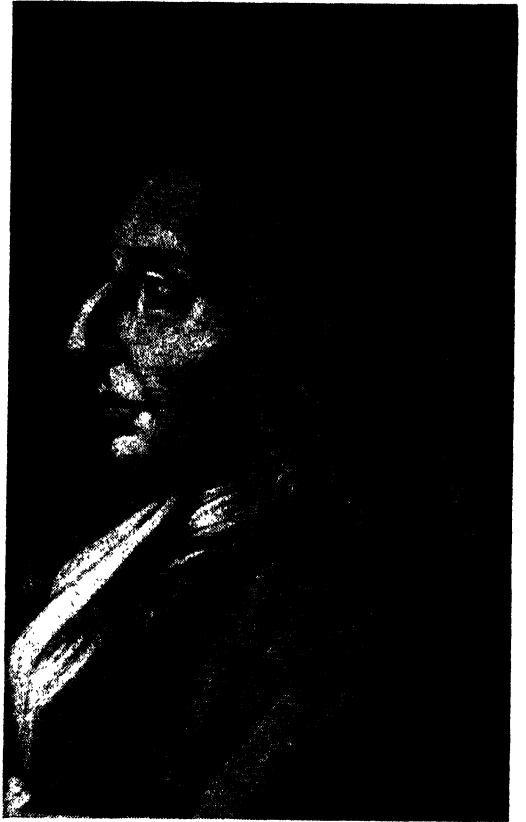
From these various materials the early classical sonata was built up. The time of uncertainty and experiment passed extraordinarily quickly, and it was not long before the development of the individual movements was achieved and a clear conception formed of the appropriate outlines of the whole. Economy of means made it necessary to take great pains in constructing the subjects of fugal movements and the melodies of slow movements. Among the most striking things in the history of instrumental music is the way in which the blending of what may be called 'neutral' themes



*Giuseppe Tartini. b. Pirano, Istria, 1692;  
d. Padua, 1770*

and brilliant figuration gave birth to the flexible modern fugue-subject with its strongly characteristic profile and how, inspired by the elegiac arioso of the Roman and Venetian cantata, the instrumental 'cantabile' appeared. In the movements that were treated contrapuntally the idea of imitation had, so to speak, to be discovered anew. The trio sonata continued to cling to these movements, as a counterbalance to the more superficial sections given up to virtuosity. In them it found a reassurance against the menace of dilettantism. In these 'canzoni' (as the more pretentious imitative movements of the sonata continued to be called for quite a long time) attention was always paid to craftsmanship. As in the later chamber duet, it was regarded as a point of honour to write in canon; the trio sonata rarely descended to facile successions of thirds.

From the restless capriccio grew the 'Sonata da chiesa' or church sonata, which in its simplest form was based on a few simple contrasts expressed in the form of two pairs of movements. Each pair consisted of a slow and a quick movement; but to these were added contrasts of time and structure between the quick movements—one being in a more severe, the other in a freer, style—and contrasts of key between the slow movements. The decrease in the number of movements was accompanied by an increase in their scope and intrinsic value, by a greater consistency of emotional content between different movements and a more logical conception of the work as a whole. The principle of the capriccio, one is tempted to suspect, is to be found in a secret

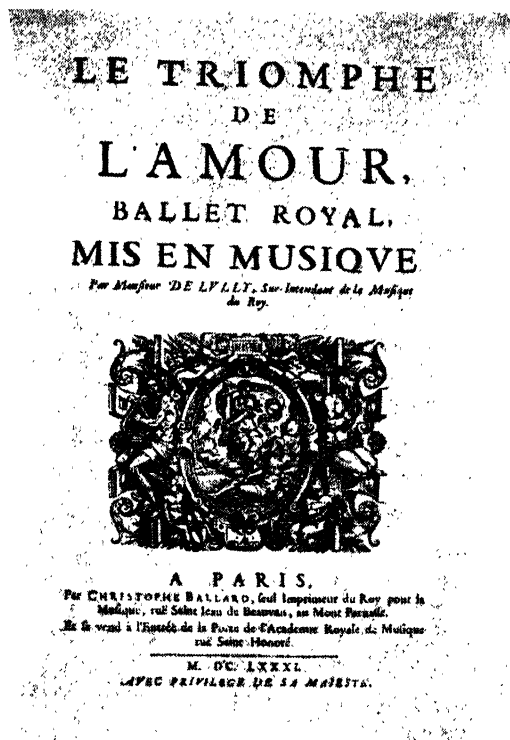


*Tommaso Vitali. b. Bologna, c. 1665;  
d. Modena(?), after 1735*

tendency towards programme-music. The church sonata, on the other hand, became in its purest form the most absolute music imaginable—if indeed there is such a thing as absolute music. It recalls the heroic atmosphere and elegaic mood of Poussin's landscapes. Fond though it is of chromatic themes, it restrains and sublimates all strong emotion. In the noblest melody, in the purist euphony it found for the first time the laws of a cogent system of modulation. The language that it speaks with such restraint is not ours; yet this wealth of splendid music can still grip our attention, can even

charm us and lay us under an enduring spell. For a whole century—from 1650 to 1750—as long as the continuo maintained its vitality, the sway of the 'Sonata da chiesa' prevailed. The great names of its heyday, which is associated with the churches and academies of Venice, Bologna, Modena and Rome, were Legrenzi, Bassani, Vitali and above all Corelli, dall'Abaco and Handel; and Tartini and Gluck still paid it homage.

Beside the church sonata came the 'Sonata da camera' or chamber sonata, a succession of dance movements with or without a freely constructed introductory movement. The idealized dance existed as early as the sixteenth century, and the oldest printed collections of dances for lute, keyboard instruments or strings already show us not only individual movements of considerable melodic charm, often with variations, but also successions of typical dance-forms, knit together by a less rigid principle of variation—in other words the origin of the suite. In Italy the incentive offered by the dance was directed to the service of chamber music and the concerted and monodic styles and, as in Germany, the variations-suite was cultivated as well as the succession of independent dance-movements. The composition of the suite changed in accordance with the constant reaction of the dance itself to new influences, principally French. About 1660, mainly through the example of the French lutenists and the clavier composers who followed in their footsteps, a stock succession of movements became established, in which the rhythmic life of the dance found its ideal expression. These were the sober *allemande*, the brisk *courante*, the slow and



J. B. Lully. 'Le Triomphe de l'amour', Paris, 1681

melancholy *sarabande* and the lively *gigue*. Between the *sarabande* and the *gigue* it was usual later on to insert the little characteristic dances which became fashionable through the French dancing-masters' insatiable passion for novelty—the *menuet*, *passépied*, *rondeau*, *bourrée*, *gavotte* and the rest. In Italy, where the inclination towards chamber music was so strong, these dances became stylized, which made it easier for them to merge into the movements of the church sonata. The *allemande* would take the place of the *canzon*, and the *sarabande* that of the slow second movement. The intrusion of the lighter types of dance-movement led eventually to the church sonata's having to exchange its first



home for the secular music-room, while the Church itself from the beginning of the eighteenth century demanded music more elaborately scored and more splendid in effect—the full panoply of the orchestra.

In Germany it was different. There the dance-movement and the suite were only united to the continuo after some difficulty. There was a reluctance to give up polyphony, and the bright boisterous wind instruments were preferred to the aristocratic violin. The result was open-air rather than chamber music. The same composers who extended so enthusiastic a welcome to the Italian dance-song produced in their dance-movements the healthiest, the most popular, the most characteristically German music imaginable. The growing influence of the South affected the stability of the German suite. The gay pieces for wind instruments, intended for performance in the open air, suffered least. Their joyous irresponsibility is seen at its best in the engaging 'tower sonatas' (music to be played from the towers of churches and other public buildings) written at the end of the century by men like Petzel and Reiche. Just when the German suite stood at the parting of the ways between chamber and orchestral music Lulli came to the rescue with his ballet suite. The Germans reacted gladly to this new stimulus.

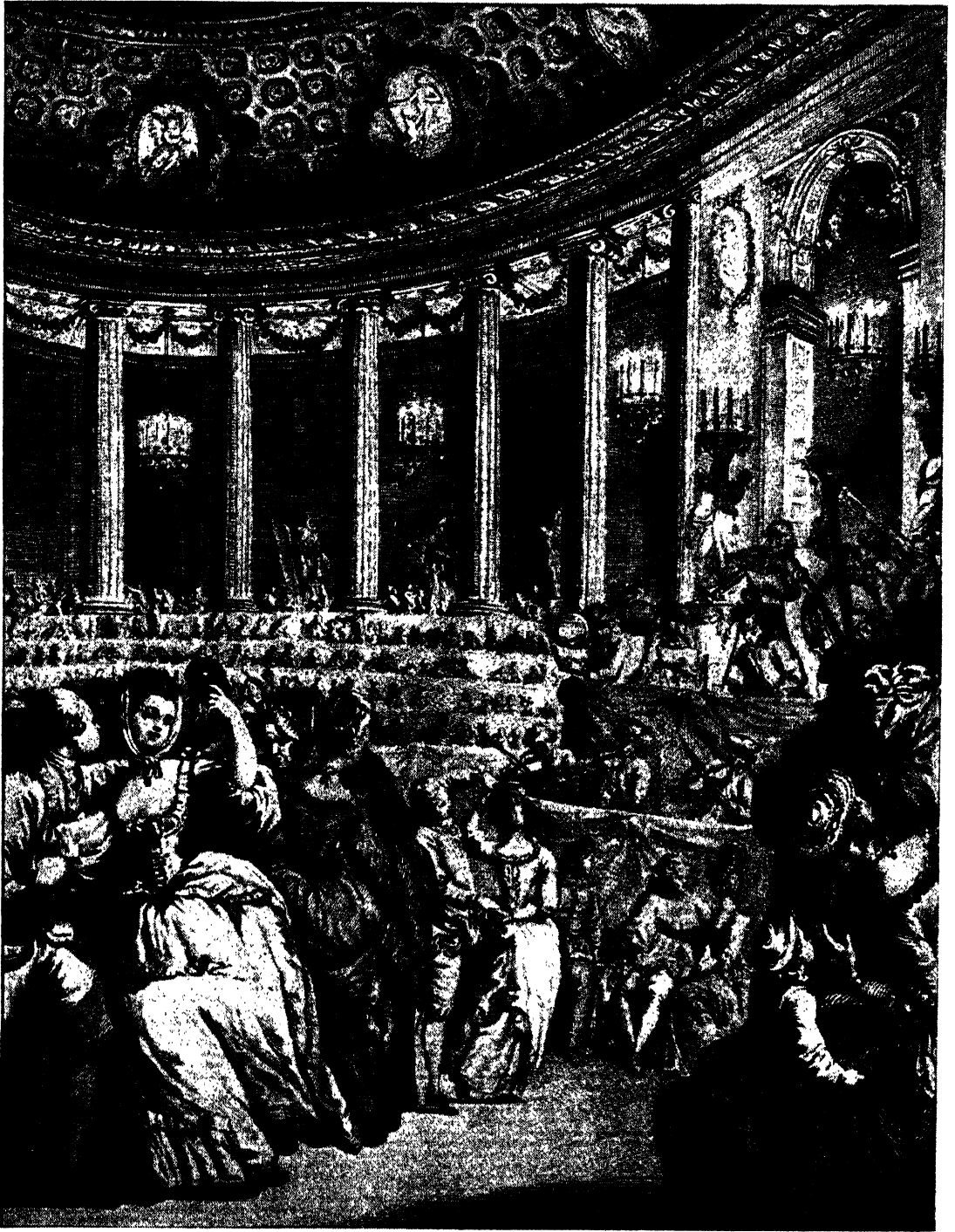
The reason is not far to seek. The Lullian suite, with its five-part writing which treated even the lowest instruments as individuals, could be linked up with the tradition of the old variations-suite. Moreover it was admirably suited to the new home of the suite, the middle-class and student



G. P. Telemann. *b. Magdeburg, 1681;  
d. Hamburg, 1767*

Collegia Musica, whose members were anxious to have something for their fingers to do and thoroughly enjoyed taking an active part in music that was full of substance and energy. At the same time Lulli's opera overture—the 'French' overture, as it is called—became the normal introductory movement of the German suite, after successive attempts had been made to adopt the intrada, the canzone and the Italian *sinfonia* in the form of the *capriccio* or the Venetian opera symphony. Once more there was genuine orchestral music. In addition to the body of strings concerted parts were also written for wind instruments, either the two oboes and bassoon of Lulli's trios or—better still—two trumpets (*clarini*), which emphasized the popular character of this type of music-making. For nearly fifty years the 'Overture', as the ballet suite was christened after its introductory movement,

THE RENAISSANCE



*French ballroom scene, 1774*

Part. I.

The *Violone* Violin.



*Man de Viol in Tunel and Applied to the Scale - Musick*  
 It is supposed you understand the use and construction of the Violone, which is a large Violin, and is used in Musick, as you see by the Picture.

*A viol player, 1659*

was the favourite music of the German collegia. The best composers produced examples of the form containing a rich store of healthy and joyous melody. Some, such as Kusser, Erlebach, Georg Muffat and J. K. F. Fischer, attached themselves more closely to the French model and, like the minor French composers, continued to draw inspiration from the stage and dances of the day. Others, among them Bach and also Telemann, Fasch and Förster, made the form a vehicle for music of wider range and greater depth. At the same time the new enthusiasm for orchestral music was an aid to the pure development of German chamber music. The organists and town

musicians of North Germany, influenced partly by the Italians and partly by the English, took a particular interest in the trio sonata—with this difference, however, that instead of two violins they preferred to write for violin and bass viol (*viola da gamba*). Thanks to the bass viol, which was peculiarly the virtuoso instrument of the North, they indulged more than the Italians in variation and fantasy.

Instrumental monody—the solo sonata—had the hardest task. The sixteenth-century tradition that it had to build upon consisted principally of a riotous luxuriance of ornamentation. This had taken two forms—the coloratura treatment of a vocal melody and the variation of dance-tunes; but in neither case was there as yet any notion of organic principles of melody. The vehicle of the new instrumental monody was not at first



*Francesco Veracini. b. Florence, 1693; d. nr. Pisa, c. 1750*

a primarily melodic instrument, such as the violin or cornett, but one whose natural function was to play a bass part—the bass viol. For this there were very good reasons. With its large number of strings and aptitude for rapid movement it was, like the lute, naturally suited to be the instrument of virtuosity. Already in the sixteenth century, in Spain, Italy and particularly England, it was much used for improvisation, the favourite form being the varying of a short bass theme, possibly taken from a song or dance melody. It had also adopted from the lute the practice of playing chords and presenting the semblance of polyphony, and this enabled it to combine melody and accompaniment in the most ingenious and suggestive manner. In England the bass viol was still cultivated at a time when the violin



Francesco Veracini. 'Sonate à tre', Dresden, 1721



Arcangelo Corelli. 'Sonate à tre', op. 3, Rome, 1689

was triumphing everywhere else, just as the elegant fancy remained popular after the rest of Europe had given a welcome to a more brilliant concerted style. Christopher Simpson's 'Division Violist' (1659) was the classic instruction book for English players. It was more than a mere technical treatise; it was rather a dignified school of improvisation and of all the forms in which that art was exercised. The bass-viol style of playing formed the foundation of the violin sonata, which inherited from it the partiality for embroidering a bass with brilliant runs, arpeggios and other embellishments. From the bass viol the violin also acquired its love of variation, as well as its readiness to abandon the continuo and build up a polyphonic structure out of its own resources. The tradition of this style was preserved for



*E. F. dall' Abaco. 'Concerti à più Instrumenti',  
1717*

many years in the German violin sonata. We owe to it the marvels of Bach's unaccompanied sonatas and partitas.

In Italy too composers began by transferring the canzon and the fugue to a solo instrument and assigned an increasingly important place in the violin sonata to the movement that represented an extract from a polyphonic composition. Corelli in his epoch-making Op. 5 (1700) handed on to the eighteenth century the form of the fugue, in which the majority of the parts were entrusted to the solo instrument. Tartini, too, in a great number of his sonatas helped the instrument in this way to attain its ascendancy. The best balance between the two partners in the solo sonata is probably to be found in the work of Antonio Veracini and Evaristo Felice dall'Abaco.

These composers succeeded in dividing equally between the two parts the harmonic material of a fugal movement with one or two subjects. After dall' Abaco there appeared the solo sonata with clavier obbligato. The duties of the accompanist became more and more responsible and it was no longer safe to leave his share to the accidents of improvisation. The second half of the eighteenth century may in fact be said to have been the age of the clavier sonata with a more or less obbligato part for the violin. All that remained open to the violin as a solo instrument, apart from the concerto, was the study.

The solo sonata, in common with the trio sonata, made use of several forms; but the one that had a particular importance in its history was the first movement of the



*Arcangelo Corelli. b. Fusignano, 1653; d. Rome,  
1713*

# Musicks Hand-maid:

New *LESSONS* and *INSTRUCTIONS*  
FOR THE  
*Virginals* or *Harpsichord*.



*Geo. P. ...*

London, Printed for J. Playford, and are sold at his Shop near the Temple-Church. 1678.

*The Virginals, 1678*

chamber sonata, which was in two sections. Its origin was the allemande, but as time went on it showed less and less trace of its ancestry in a dance-form. Contrasts in its melodic structure appeared quite early. An idea would be stated and answered, the contrast being generally between the flowing legato melody natural to the allemande and elaborate figuration in the virtuoso style. It was in this form that the new principles of instrumental cantabile were first established. In the first half of the eighteenth century there was a continual increase in the length of movements and in the emphasis laid on contrast; the widely accepted trans-

formation of the style of the concerto to the solo sonata was a sign of the times. The spans and stresses of the rising edifice grew more ambitious, until finally the last vestiges of the old style were thrown aside; the moving bass and the restrictions of a definite metrical scheme lost their binding force. The early classical sonata discovered sonata form for its first movement; and with the discovery of the form came a new spirit—the 'dramatic' spirit of modern music.

At the end of the seventeenth century the grand orchestral sonata also reappeared in a particular form which was rich in possibilities for the future—the concerto-grosso

and the solo concerto. The name 'concerto-grosso' was first applied to the orchestral sonata; but the term also included the church sonata and later the chamber sonata with massed strings, so that 'concerto' in this case referred to the method of performance. But the name also described a particular formal structure; and from the first quarter of the seventeenth century it was used exclusively in this sense. In the concerto-grosso a number of characteristic effects of contrast were brought to life and fitted together in a properly adjusted whole. The old delight in pitting different blocks of instrumental tone against one another was revived in the form of a strongly marked contrast between a ritornello for full orchestra and a concertino for solo instruments. In Italy the concertino was generally written for two violins and violoncello, but the Germans



G. B. Viotti. b. Piedmont, 1753; d. London, 1824

preferred various solo wind instruments. This contrast between the *forte* of the tutti and the fainter sound of the solo instruments gives us a clear idea of the simple conception of musical dynamics that prevailed at the time. There was a further contrast between the simple melodic character of the ritornello and the impetuous virtuosity of the solo sections.

In the trio sonata and the solo sonata of this period the contrast between plain melody and its elaborate transformation by virtuosity had not yet been perfectly adjusted; and this is true even of Corelli's famous Op. 5. In the concerto-grosso this contrast found at last its legitimate home and its æsthetic justification. The statement of the theme by the full orchestra, then contention and rivalry, assent or contradiction on the part of the solo instruments,



Antonio Vivaldi. b. Venice(?), c. 1675;  
d. Vienna, 1741

interruption and prolongation, digression or return to the starting-point, subordination of the orchestra to the soloist or the group of soloists—all this gave the concerto's three movements such intense vitality, such a wealth of new associations, that it is not surprising that from Italy it quickly passed to Germany and England, and carried all before it. Practically all the streams of instrumental composition in the seventeenth century flowed into the concerto-grosso; but a special contribution was made by the Venetian opera overture with its trumpet solos and by Lulli's overtures and chaconnes, in which short compact episodes and variations were entrusted to a wood-wind trio. Arcangelo Corelli seems to have followed a different line of approach. The wealth of musical resources in Rome and a natural inclination to give his virtuosity wider scope may have led him consciously to combine the old ritornello-symphony and the trio-sonata. The immortal service that he rendered to music was the significant incorporation of the several parts in an essentially artistic whole.

The solo concerto appeared later than the concerto-grosso. In the work of its first



*A vignette for Chamber Music*

important exponent, the Bolognese composer Giuseppe Torelli, the form is still primitive; the solo instrument is merely used to relieve the tutti and deals with the same material. As it developed, however, along the path that led to Tartini and Viotti, the combination of rival elements became more and more dramatic and the alternation of solo and tutti was dictated less by considerations of structure and tone than by an artistic impulse governing the whole.

The concerto-grosso became the favourite instrumental form of the period. Composers, players and listeners were all infatuated with it. Soon the resources it employed were multiplied in accordance with the tendencies of the baroque period, and there was a return to the more massive



*South German Church Music, c. 1620*





German performance of a Mass, by a triple choir, c. 1620

structure of the old choral style. Alternatively the possibilities of tone-painting were exploited, as in the work of Antonio Vivaldi. The purest and noblest memorials of the Italian style are Handel's Concerti Grossi; of the German, with its greater variety and characteristic inflexions, Bach's 'Brandenburg' concertos, though their individuality and wealth of dynamics and expression take them far beyond the limits of the mere type. In the second half of the eighteenth century the concerto-grosso declined, while the solo concerto continued to flourish. From the dissolution and decay of the older ideal the new symphonists took

the materials with which, after a momentous period devoted to chamber music, they were to build their new edifice.

PROTESTANT CHURCH MUSIC

It is the glory of a few great and many lesser devoted, humble Protestant masters, that German music in the seventeenth century did not wholly merge into the stream of forms from Italy. Protestant sacred music had first of all to define its relation to the new instrumental style; here as in the Italian motherland the old persisted vigorously beside the new. It did so chiefly in the sumptuous Venetian motet forms, with their many voices and many choirs, whose most temperamental and colour-loving exponents were Michael Prætorius and Johann Hermann Schein. Prætorius revel-

led in the wealth of opportunity they afforded for vocal and instrumental settings, and sought to bind them with the choral melody in Florentine finery. The North Italian influences were developed with more independence, energy and imagination by the St Thomas Cantor, Schein, in his choral motets, charged with overflowing strength, and his sacred concertos, with their richly contrasting patterns. Besides the large-scale motets with their demand, too, for an important body of instrumentalists, which had retained an extraordinary vitality, went the modest vocal motets for choir-boy services—models at the same time for more

rural use—in which the minor Thuringian Cantors especially have handed down a treasury of simple yet full-sounding music, music homely and popular yet reflective and filled with the genuine polyphonic spirit.

The master who sought to win a place in German Church music for the new monodic, concerted music originating in the South was Heinrich Schütz (1585-1672), one of the greatest German composers. The chorale played an unimportant part in his work; he made it his mission to win for his nation and creed dramatic music in all its true forms. He was twice in Italy, first as a personal pupil of Giovanni Gabrieli, then as a spiritual disciple of Monteverdi. From 1617 till the end of his life he was active at the Dresden Court Chapel. After a decade happily spent in organization, he toiled to check the effects, so fatal to art, of the thirty Years' War. Three times he attempted to escape by travelling to Denmark. At the end of his long life, tired out, he willingly handed over the reins to the Italians, who were becoming more and more favoured in Dresden. This man of deep inwardness of character and tender sensibility, destined to live in a stormy age and isolated in his career, as in his work, is of all artists one of the most moving, most ideal figures. He was well aware of the danger of dilettantism inherent in monody, and issued warnings against it verbally and in three great publications of different character, in which he pointed to the permanent worth of the pure a-cappella style and thus helped to ensure that the German composers down to Bach should never, like the Italians, have to keep it artificially alive.



*J. H. Schein. b. Grünhain, 1586; d. Leipzig, 1630*

Otherwise he accepted the new forms both enthusiastically and deliberately and sought to mould them to the character of the German language and infuse them with German warmth. In accordance with his two visits to Italy, one part of his output has affinities with Gabrieli's music in the splendid drive of its vocal and instrumental style—in this way Schütz perfected for Germany the model of the great free Church cantata—and the other with the music of Monteverdi and Alessandro Grandi. Out of the spirit of monodic song, the sphere of small vocal and instrumental media and their combination with choir and orchestra, there grew a wealth of ingenious, expressive forms. There is in this music a sense of spring-like awakening, a continuous stirring of dramatic life. From the motet grew the oratorio scena; and in late old age, after



Heinrich Schütz. *b. Köstritz, 1585; d. Dresden, 1672*

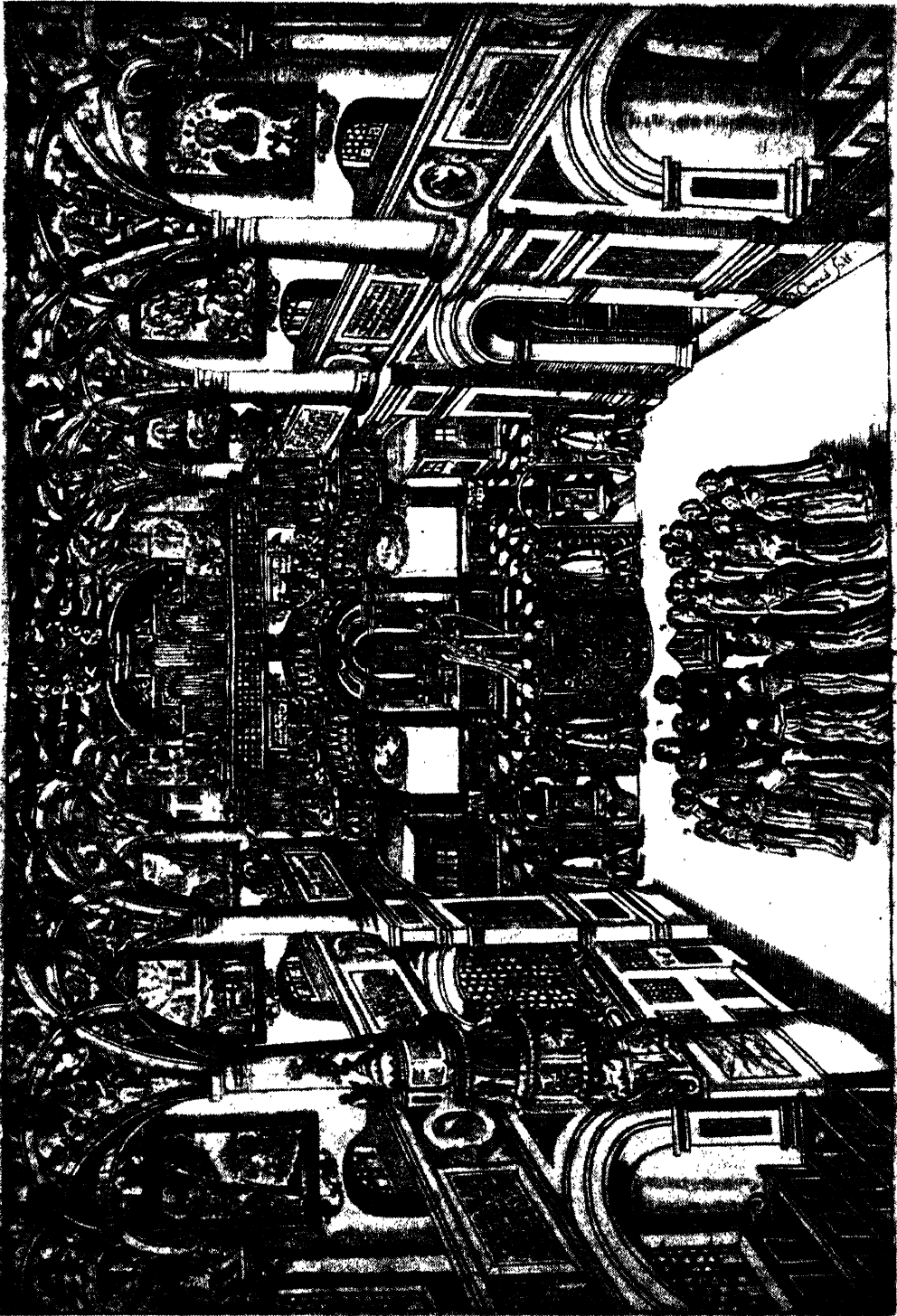
many other attempts in the oratorio style, Schütz wrote down his conception of the dramatic rendering of the Passion in three separate settings. Here, as always, his expression was of the keenest, not shrinking from the most daring resources of harmony and melody, yet always very simple and genuine. In his urge towards the utmost truth of expression, in his aversion to all surface polish for the sake of mere formal beauty, and at the same time in the instinctive sureness of his construction, Schütz, here where he is greatest, is comparable only to a great German painter—Albrecht Dürer.

Schütz's Faustian spirit was not inherited by any of his imitators and pupils, not even by Andreas Hammerschmidt—by virtue of

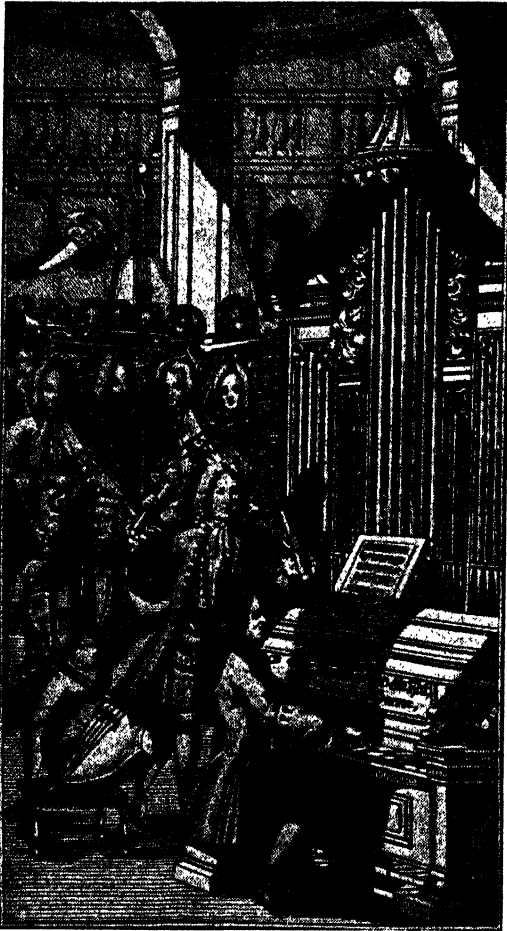
his suave, attractive melody the most influential among them—whose ingenious 'Dialogues' were the favourite form of religious music. The variety and fluency of Schütz's forms suffered a limitation to a small number of fixed formal types, to a more traditional way of handling the relationship between voice and instruments. At the same time there were in comparison with the Italian cantata a few distinguishing features. The favourite voice of the Italians was the soprano, that of the Germans the bass. Furthermore, in the German cantata the instrumental part is far more exuberant. There is no limit to the number of ritornellos and sinfonias.

But in one respect Schütz's contemporaries enormously enriched the church cantata, increasing its content both in form and in poetic expression by their use of the chorale. Through the chorale a piece of medieval Netherland tradition, which might otherwise not have survived so long, was rescued for a later age. But the difference between the employment of the Gregorian and the Protestant chorale is nevertheless great. Through its compact, popular form, through its long exercise as congregational song, the Protestant chorale had attained a purer crystallization than the Gregorian had ever done. It had become not merely the liturgical but also the poetic kernel of church music. It was never to be used as a mere connecting link, to disappear from the artistic whole; whenever it emerges it does so as a living organism, always drawing attention to itself as a symbol of the universal and the divine. That this came to pass is to the credit of the German organists

THE RENAISSANCE



*South German Church Music, c. 1670. (The conductor is Heinrich Schütz)*



*Performance of a Church Cantata, South Germany,  
c. 1730*

who understood Samuel Scheidt's decisive achievement and did not let it pass unheeded.

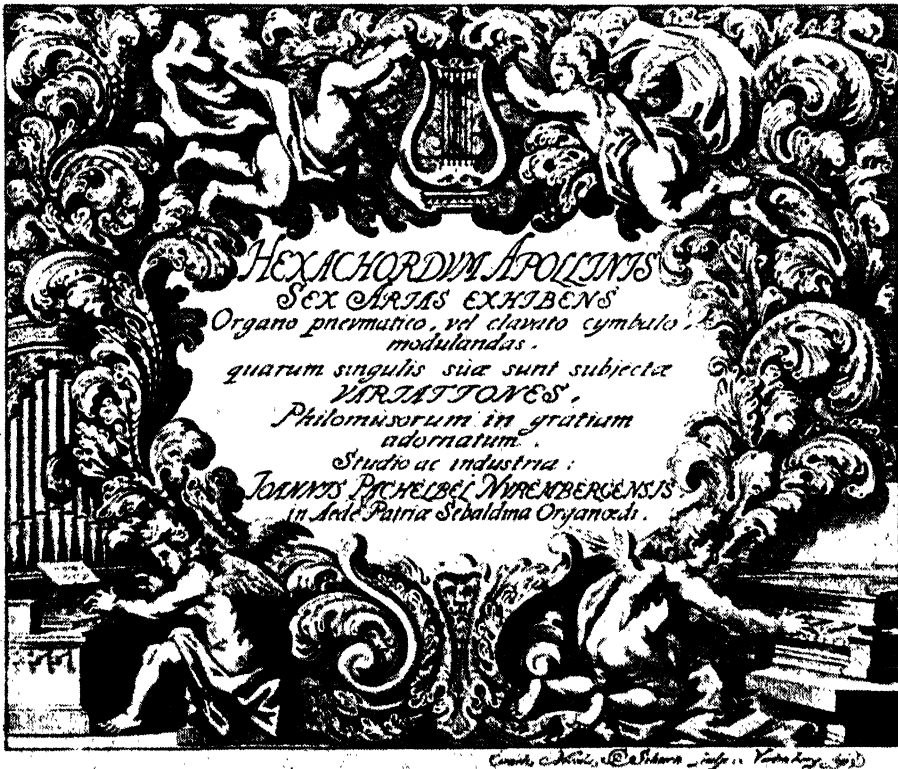
The organ assumed an increasing importance in public worship. A second work of Scheidt, dating from 1650, testifies to one of its functions, that of accompanying congregational singing with the melody unaltered, while giving prominence and life to the subsidiary voices—a challenge to the profoundest harmonic interpretation, which no one before Bach was fully able to meet. Another of the organ's functions was

to play the Magnificat responses, in which the dependence on liturgical motives and respect for the church modes—originally insisted upon—diminished more and more, so that eventually they were developed into a kind of school of fugue, with completely free thematic treatment. A third function was the elaboration of the chorale during Communion and the playing of preludes and postludes when hymns were sung by the congregation. In the course of all this the chorale was treated in every conceivable way. Variations could be made upon it, perhaps for home use on the clavier; the theme of the first line could be worked fugally, or the melody ornamented and introduced over a ground bass; or alternatively—and this was the ideal way—the simple melody could be both contrasted with and related poetically to the contrapuntal imitation of the subsidiary voices.

Most influential in this connexion was the work of Johann Pachelbel of Nuremberg, whose education and widespread activities made him—like G. Gabrieli and Sweelinck previously—one of the most important disseminators. He was the chief representative of the South German style of organ-playing, with its highly varied treatment of the chorale and close connexion with the liturgy. The North German masters, with Vincent Lübeck and Dietrich Buxtehude at their head, turned rather to freer forms. They expanded the toccata, the fantasia, the capriccio and the ricercar and filled them with imaginative content, while their attitude towards the chorale was more subjective and, one might almost say, less respectful.

What was suitable to the chorale on the organ was suitable also in vocal music. It was introduced into the new free concerted motets as a symbol of the divine—as comfort, admonition and promise—and in contrast to the human. The text had become in the course of time so intimately bound up with the melody that the chorale played by instruments alone could find a still more subtle and artistic employment and express a still profounder meaning. An old, yet new, polyphonic music, suggestive of the early motets, came to light again; only what had once been meaningless combination was now instinct with poetry. This poetical

treatment of the chorale was applied to all the new examples of concerted motets that arrived from Italy with every fresh generation of composers. It remained also when, about 1700, some of the German Church-cantata librettists, who had hitherto contented themselves with chorale and Biblical texts, or at the most with strophic songs on a small scale, introduced the great, free lyrical forms of the Italians—the recitative and the aria. Whereas Schütz had already stood for an exclusively musical approach, there now arose sacred music of the most subjective kind; and it was only natural that, especially in pietistic circles, sharp



Johannes Pachelbel. 'Hexachordum Apollinis', Nuremberg, 1699

*Zweyter Theil*  
der  
*Clavier-Ubung*  
bestehend in  
einem Concerto nach Italienischen Style  
und  
einer Overture nach Französischer Art  
vor ein  
Clavierspiel mit zweyen  
Clavieren  
Denen Liebhabern zur Gemüths-Entzückung verfertigt  
von  
*Johann Sebastian Bach*  
Kochsforst, Sachse, Hofenfeldt, Capellmeister  
und  
Director der Chori Musicae Lipsienis  
in Verlegung  
Christoph Weigel Bamberg

J. S. Bach. 'Clavierubung', part 2, Nuremberg,  
1735

opposition should have been aroused by this operatic treatment of the divine service. In point of fact, Bach alone succeeded in so sublimating the baroque spirit of this style of church music that down to this day even the most susceptible have hardly been able to object to the use of contemporary secular sources in his art.

#### BACH

What is there not to be found in the Bach cantata, sacred or secular! There are the grand Italian aria for one or more voices, accompanied by a simple continuo or by several instruments, the arioso, the recitative. There are choral motets, homophonic or fugal, there are concerted choral movements with the richest alternations of chorus

and soli. The treatment of the chorale melody exhausts possibility, from the plainest four-part harmonization upwards. In the introductions the orchestral symphony is represented from its earliest Gabrielian shape to the contemporary French overture, and on to the modern concerto form. All these things the greatest of musicians welded in that spiritual and melodic furnace which was Bach's and Bach's alone, into such a unity that the problems of style presented by his tentative predecessors in their essays to balance vocal and instrumental elements sink into nothingness.

Bach was a great river into which all things flowed; and all that his own age and the ages before him had done and dreamed of were his tributaries. That old polyphonic language that was his was in his generation not commonly to be found in this strength and naturalness; it was the outburst of waters from long-hidden springs. Symbolic is Bach's origin in the heart of Germany, sprung of a family of organists and town-bandsmen, then the most musical section of German society. In a family circle of relations by blood and relations by art, near and far, he found the first sustenance for a mind greedy for learning. He began in the field of clavier music and of the motet and cantata. He went on to the organ school of Pachelbel and Buxtehude. Nothing that France or Italy could provide in the way of stimulus but was eagerly apprehended; not a stone was rejected, but every available one was put to an apt purpose in the building of his art. He delighted in kindling his imagination at alien fires; themes from foreign lands attracted him. He would take up



J. S. BACH

*Copied (c. 1800) from the painting of 1746 by E. G. Haussmann*





whole compositions by other composers and with his own more vigorous breath inspire them with new life. His Passacaglia would not have existed without Buxtehude; nor 'The Forty-Eight' (Das wohltemperierte Klavier), had it not been for an opuscle, 'Ariadne Musica' (1715), by a gifted harpsichordist, J. K. F. Fischer; nor his harpsichord suites without the preparatory work done in that vast field by the French. But he could touch nothing that did not grow under his hand to the utmost completeness and grandeur. All things flourish with him like the trees of the forest, broad-crowned and superb, and inevitable alike in the grandest branching polyphony and the most delicate of melodic sprays and blossoms. His polyphonic habit of thought led him along harmonic ways that, while not unlawful, were yet of the utmost daring. He was the first to make free and assured use of the possibilities of equal temperament (the division of the octave into twelve equal semitones, which had been effected finally and definitely by his contemporary Andreas Werckmeister), by completing the cycle of keys.

The art of the Bach cantata is an exposition of the foundations and principles of the Christian faith, and none more searching or more inexorable, deeper or more precise has ever been. The temporal life and the eternal, works and faith, mortality and death, sin and repentance, suffering and salvation—all the emotions and inspirations of the Christian soul exalted this, the greatest of preachers since Luther, not to theological abstractions but to a passionate presentation by symbolic means of an incomparably vivid

musical imagination. Bach's cantatas are truly a musical *biblia pauperum*. Joyous he could be, no man more so, as countless pages of his instrumental music show; but in the depths of his nature he was preoccupied with the mystery of man's end and the soul's yearning for redemption. A mystical rapture seizes him at the thought of the body's doom and the soul's hereafter.

Only in recent times has the world begun to apprehend Bach's unique musical imagination aright. So searching was his vision that his themes tell us unmistakably the conception he formed of the attributes of God the Father, of Christ as Lord, Redeemer and Victor, of the Devil as tempter, serpent and adversary. It is not that his imagination is a storehouse of ready-made motifs; rather is it the universe of a supreme creative power, crowded with the vital forms of his begetting. And it is not that his musical symbolism is primarily dependent upon the text. While the themes of his choral fugues and motets are marvels of concentrated eloquence and spirit, mysteriously inexhaustible, his recitative (which has practically nothing in common with the Italian *secco*) incomparably unites a free and precise verbal expression with rhythmic decision, a wealth of music and formal strength. It is a whole, not a complement. As for the Bach aria, it is a monumental entity, yet filled with passionate thought and capable of the utmost flexibility.

And he, the most subjective and personal of polyphonic composers, felt more strongly than any other contemporary cantata-writers the right of the chorale to the central place in his work. Hardly one of the two



*François Couperin, b. Paris, 1688; d. Paris, 1733*

hundred cantatas that have come down to us is without its chorale; if in no other form, at least as a simple conclusion, with wonderfully expressive harmonies, to give as it were in the most concentrated form an ideal representation of the community. The symbolic outline of the hymn appears in movements of apparently the freest construction. Bach's favourite form in his choral cantatas (about a quarter of the whole were solo cantatas) is a kind of adaptation of the chorale-prelude, in which the objective hymn, sung in the treble, is set off by the more subjective utterances of the lower voices and the orchestral commentary. The rhetorical effects obtained by a show of increasing animation play no part in the Bach cantatas. Here the mere statement of the hymn, following upon a

brilliant movement, declares by its very plainness the depth of its significance. Intensity, in those of Bach's greater works that were conceived as a whole, is achieved by the sheer weight of the matter of the music and its inevitable development. Nowhere, it may be said, is Bach the man to be seen more radically possessed than in these works: the festal Magnificat and the two surviving examples of his Good Friday music which treat of the Passion and Death of Jesus—the 'Passion according to St Matthew', a communal drama of a compassion all-comprehending and an intuition unapproachable, and the 'Passion according to St John', an absorbed contemplation of the mystery of the divine Person of Christ. Finally, in the mass in B minor Bach miraculously realized all that was most complete, comprehensive and objective in his conception of the essence and being of Christianity. Supreme musicianship, the utmost vividness of imagination and the profoundest capacity for emotion were in Bach made one.

His instrumental music ranges over a perhaps still wider spiritual field. Also in this field he epitomizes the centuries and the nations. It is as though the seventeenth-century Italians had only striven to develop all instrumental forms while leaving perfection for him; it is as though François Couperin, the great master of the harpsichord, and himself the completion of the original and charming work of three generations, had developed the French clavier suite to a high point only in order to give Bach a stimulus. Part of this side of his work too was dedicated to the Church. Those eminently programmatic compositions, the

*Prelude to  
J. S. Bach*

This image shows a handwritten musical score for a prelude by J.S. Bach. The score is written on 15 staves, arranged in two columns of seven staves each, with the final staff on the right. The notation is in a cursive, handwritten style, characteristic of an autograph. It features a variety of rhythmic values, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and rests. The piece begins with a treble clef and a common time signature (C). The handwriting is dense and detailed, capturing the intricate texture of the original manuscript.

J. S. Bach. 'The Forty Eighth'. Autograph of Prelude no. 15 from Book 2, 1744



G. F. Handel. 'Rinaldo', 1711

chorale-preludes, in whose narrow room life lives at its utmost intensity, give us the range of his feeling, as likewise does the superb architecture of the organ preludes and fugues, which are also programme music, generally devotional in content. But who shall tell the wealth of this man's mind, revealed in the sparkling life of the orchestral suites, in the concertos, in the intimate utterances of his chamber sonatas, in the countless works of every sort with which he endowed the domestic keyboard instruments — toccatas, preludes, fugues, variations, partitas and suites! Every instrument that was capable of polyphonic

expression received his outpourings. To the harpsichord he makes a present of the Reincken chamber sonata, the 'Italian concerto', the new solo sonata. The violoncello is set to play the suites; proud fugues and the mighty chaconne are entrusted to four fiddle-strings. He experiments; he makes a mixture of all kinds of forms—and out of it emerges as a matter of course a perfect shape. Bach's fugue is the consummation of the species. His theme is always an unmistakable individual in a definite situation, a creature born to experience; and its experiences correspond to its character. Hence no two fugues are alike in form, though all are consummate in their various ways. If that art whose spiritual content is the most concentrated has the best prospect of a long life, then will the inventions and 'sinfonias', and the preludes and fugues of the 'Forty-Eight' endure forever. The works of the last phase, the 'Musical Offering' and 'The Art of Fugue', belong to what Goethe called 'the supreme works of art which are frankly unprepossessing; they are ideals, which can and should be only approximately pleasing—æsthetic imperatives'. Bach is of the company of those masters with whom every age and every individual must arrive at a new understanding; and still his greatness has not been appraised, nor can be ever.

## HANDEL

Handel's greatness rests on quite other foundations than Bach's. The childish observation has been made that Handel wrote a heap of indifferent works, which Bach had too thorough a training and too simple



G. F. Handel. 'Messiah', 1741. Last leaf of autograph

an eye to pure music to do; and this has brought upon him the misunderstanding of sciolists and even of masters. But Bach himself, Mozart and Beethoven thought otherwise; and indeed Handel, if we take his personality as a whole, stands as little below Bach as Bach is below him. He was one of those musicians who only late in life discover and embrace their true vocation. Like Bach he ripened early; but while Bach undertook those journeys—the farthest of them to Hamburg—in which he learned his art, only in order to enrich his mind and

then to retreat again into himself, Handel felt impelled, both as a musician and as a man, to grow continually in breadth and freedom. Hamburg first, then Italy—opening out to his sturdy, healthy German musicianship as the school of pure, true, classical melody—and finally England; these are fixed as the stations in the upward climb of an heroic life. And his exceptional productivity, in instrumental works, in church music in the grand manner, and in opera—he wrote about thirty Italian operas for London—was the



*English performance of oratorio, c. 1735*

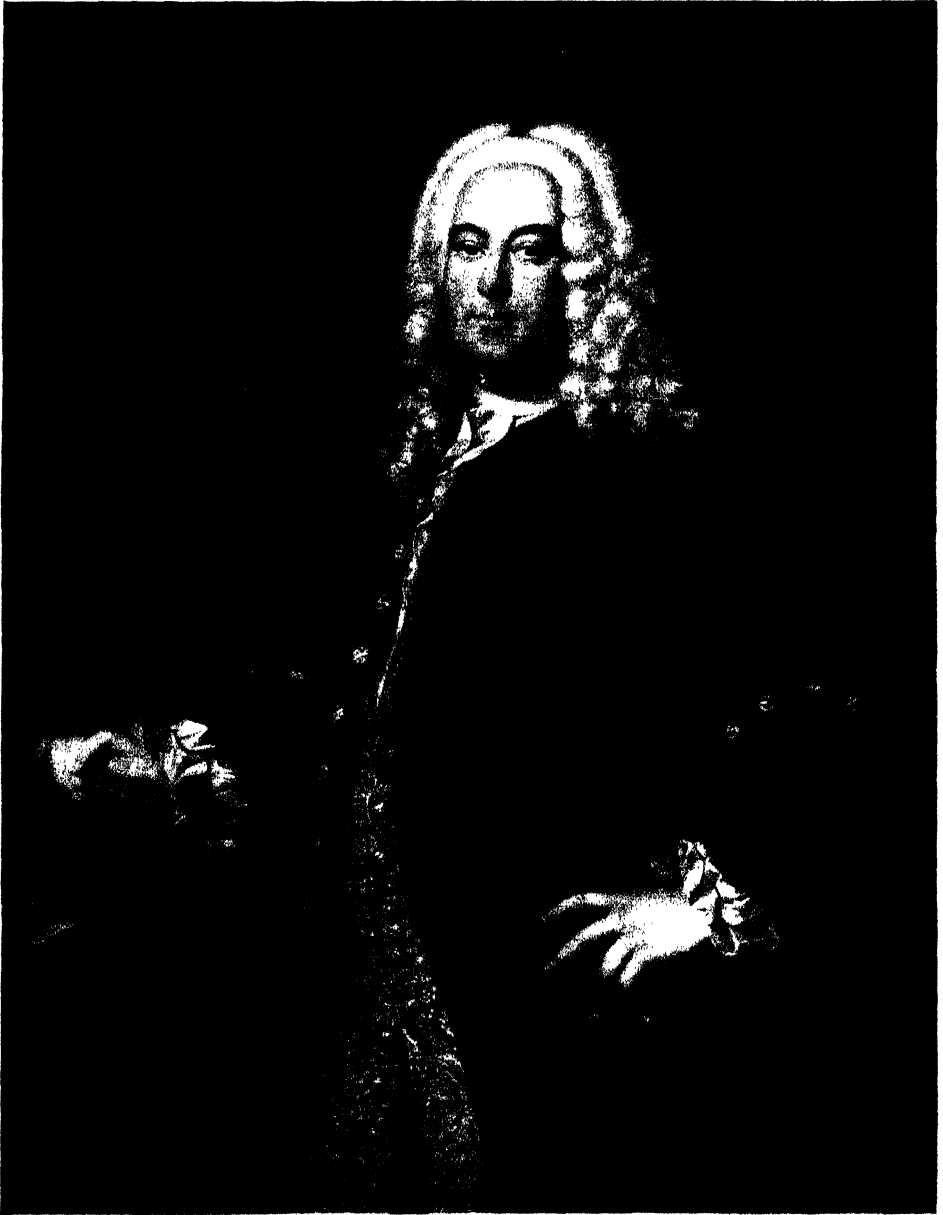
preparatory school for his own particular creation, oratorio.

Oratorio, when it came into Handel's powerful grasp, had already had a long and interesting history. As originally conceived it was the means which the Roman Counter-reformation had specifically adopted to combat the seductive lure of secular art and to defeat it with its own weapons, by employing it in the Church for devotional purposes. It might use Italian words or the rather more solemn tone of Latin, but in either case it took over all the forms of secular art that were current in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries—in historical order, villanella, canzonetta, madrigal and solo-cantata or choral cantata, large or small. Its subjects, inherited from the age-

old mystery plays, were the stories and episodes of the Old and New Testaments and the legends of the saints. These it set in a framework of two parts comprising the edifying message, and connected them at first by narrative, but afterwards gave them dramatic form. In Carissimi's hands it had burgeoned as a Latin choral work, but by Handel's time it had blossomed into Italian oratorio and as such had become a substitute during Lent for the opera and its solo work. The characteristics that distinguished the oratorio style from the operatic lay in the appeal to the hearer's imagination, in the incentive to, and the justification

for, a more delicate moulding of the musical material, and especially in the more extended use of the chorus.

The way in which Handel met the claims of oratorio is to be explained not historically but only by the native sway of his whole mood and musical personality. About half of his oratorios, eighteen of them perhaps, are dramas of imagination. Taking the Jewish nation as his instance he follows the fortunes of a chosen people, he depicts their champions and their adversaries; and he does this with a greatness and simplicity, with a variety of detail and a pictorial grasp, at times, too, with a sense of humour, that argue alike the great musician, the great dramatist and the great man. The Florentine dream of the renaissance of classical drama



G. F. HANDEL

*From the painting by Thomas Hudson*





THE RENAISSANCE



*G. F. Handel. 'Messiah' in Westminster Abbey, 1784*



*Performance of a chorale, 1769*

here comes true. A Greek would probably at once have understood the position and the meaning of the chorus in Handel's oratorio. The two oratorios which have done most to establish his fame, 'Israel in Egypt' and 'Messiah', stand apart. 'Israel', that mighty choral oratorio, shows how a people of God lives and grows in history. 'Messiah' dispenses entirely with action and resolves every event into emotion, and in that way shows how the promises of

Christianity are fulfilled. The two together constitute a free confession of religious faith comparable only to that of Bach's B minor mass, which had been completed but a short time before.

Great as is the sheer musical power that is shown everywhere in these works, especially in the choruses, which achieve the mightiest effects with the simplest means, it is not there that we look for the full import of Handel's creations. There can be no greater mistake than to fancy that the oratorio was nourished on ecclesiastical ground. On the contrary, it ranks with the opera as a free artistic effort, for in it for the first time a great artistic personality is speaking to his ideal public, to a nation and

not to a parish. Handel's achievement is the preparation for what Beethoven afterwards did with the symphony; and it is on this eminence that these two masters, so utterly unlike, meet as conquerors. The performances of Handel's oratorios, particularly of 'Messiah', first in the British Isles and then in Germany, invigorated the whole of musical public life; they enfranchised art, and addressed it to the world at large instead of to the narrow circle of connoisseurs.

## CHAPTER V

# MODERN TIMES

### HOMOPHONY

**B**ACH and Handel, composers of true polyphonic mettle, project, in their latest works, into a period that had long followed other ideals. The age of the figured bass ended in the triumph of homophony. As early as 1737 a champion of the moderns, Johann Adolph Scheibe, had stigmatized Bach's music as turgid and confused; and Jean-Jacques Rousseau gave even more one-sided expression to the spirit of the times when he advocated the cult of melody and turned his back on any harmonic solidity and still more on any counterpoint. Great was the decline from the native strength of the overtures of composers such as Bach and Fasch to the symphonic output of Italians or Italianate Germans, from the sonatas of Corelli or Abaco to those of Nardini or Pugnani with their feminine endings, their repetitions that protracted without enhancing, their windy effeminacy, their impotence in expression, and their substitution of noise for vigour. The change of taste can be read in their basses. These had once been part of the thematic structure, but now they move inconsequently in support of the harmonies with unwilling feet, at the most enlivened by subdivision into idle semiquavers. With that, all melodic expression evaporated in endless *fioriture*.

We are now in the classical age of instru-

mental and vocal virtuosity, for which, however necessary as a brilliant school of melody, the historians have hardly had a good word. They have found their scapegoat in Neapolitan opera as it developed after the death of Alessandro Scarlatti. Neapolitan opera had, indeed, abandoned itself with so little reflection to the lure of purely sensuous melody and done such violence to any kind of dramatic truth, that the real motive for change came from within. Johann Adolph Hasse, the man of the moment, who set the librettos of Zeno and Metastasio to the entire satisfaction of Italy and Germany, had now reached the limit of what could be achieved by that tenderness and grace that came to him by nature. His greatest successor in the operatic field, Niccolò Jommelli, who followed him in European favour, refined his orchestral accompaniment by an extended range of expression. In its *accompagnato* the orchestra seized upon the moments of passionate crisis in the recitative before the aria begins, and therein taught itself a hitherto unsuspected versatility, while the aria itself enlarged its repertory of forms. From the early years of the eighteenth century æsthetic theory took a lively interest in all operatic problems. Debate grew heated on the relative merits of the two national operas,

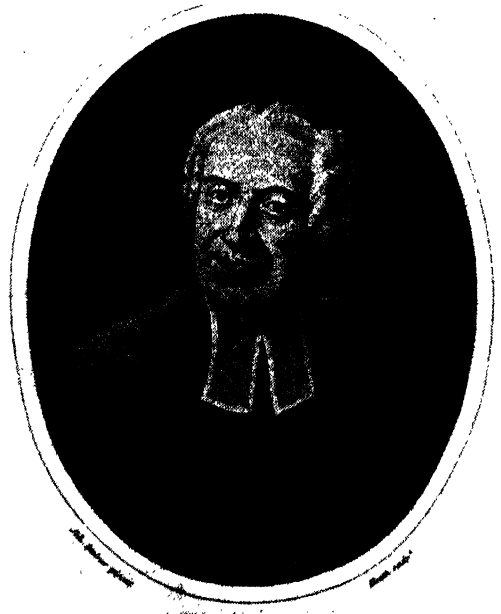


*J. J. Rousseau. b. Geneva, 1712; d. Paris, 1778*

Italian and French; recourse was had to classical drama in order to reach a genuine and independent conception of what opera should be. French opera showed itself impervious to any influences from the South, and attained, under its greatest master, Rameau, alone, within the limits of its traditional style, a refined and stable culture; whereas an Italian, Traetta, sought to unite the beauties of both operas.

The real reform of opera came from Christof Willibald Gluck, a master who, like Archimedes with his spiral, found his point of leverage outside what could strictly be called music, and whom his enemies accordingly accused of making music without music. For this he called to his aid a man of fine intellect, whose instincts were æsthetic rather than poetical—Ranieri da Calzabigi. Gluck's actual achievement was

the building and shaping of a new form of opera, and there was no way of doing this without a violent attack by every weapon of literary polemics upon the prevailing tradition. Fundamentally the attack was directed not so much against the arbitrary caprice of singers, with all its destructive effect on the sense of the drama, nor even against the convention of the male soprano. It is true that Gluck dispenses with coloratura, but he makes the severest demands of the Italian school on his singers; Orpheus is, after all, essentially a castrato role. The attack was aimed rather at the opera libretto of his time, which had reached its most beguiling literary form in Pietro Metastasio's much-lauded dramas, set to music hundreds of times—and even by the young Gluck himself. The opera of intrigue, clad in historical or classical garb, was now to give



*Pietro Metastasio. b. Rome, 1698; d. Venice, 1782*



*C. W. von Gluck. b. Erasbach, 1714; d. Vienna, 1788*

place to the tragic conflicts of all time. The story was to return to its simplest form. Instead of the conventions of the aria-opera—the most enervating feature of which was the ‘metaphor aria’, introduced solely to provide the composer with a suggestion for a picturesque accompaniment—the musician was to acknowledge the supremacy of the dramatist. Standardized sentiment, polite ‘delicacy’, the avoidance of all vivid expression, the bloodless idealization of the characters—all this was to give way to living figures. The traditional plot, in the case of Metastasio chiefly concerned with love and tragically helpless heroism, was to yield to genuine passions.

Gluck’s greatness lies not in the fact that he made these demands, but in the way in which as an artist he fulfilled them, in the importance he attached to the development of the opera as a musical-dramatic entity, and in his realization, at first intellectual and then musical, of the essential characters of his personages. Orpheus, the bard and a fond young husband; Alcestis, the self-sacrificing wife; the effeminate Phrygian Paris contrasted with Helen, the vigorous Spartan; the warlike Achilles; Agamemnon distraught by his terrible dilemma as father and king; the sorceress Armida; Iphigenia, priestess and sister; Thoas, the grim and superstitious barbarian—Gluck saw into the nature of them all and portrayed them with elemental rhythms, virile austerity and a minimum of purely ‘musical’ music, straining his untiring energies in the attainment of subtle dramatic interpretation. Strong in purpose, in Vienna and in Paris alike he pursued his ideal. How far above the cheap

plaster-antiques of his age stand his vivid conceptions and visions of these classic characters! How grand the scenes that Gluck succeeded for the first time in welding into a whole from solo, dance and chorus! What an art was his in accumulation, contrast and peroration! He had the power of creating an inner unity that replaced the unity of conventional form. In ‘Orfeo’, for the first time in the history of opera, Gluck employs accompanied recitative throughout in place of secco recitative. The chorus of mourners, interrupted by Orpheus’s lamentations, his descent to Hades, the chorus and dance of the Furies appeased by his playing until, terrible still, they lay themselves to rest; then the change from this scene to the Elysian Fields, where the orchestra magically evokes Nature translated to the heavenly sphere and the choral round of the souls of the blest; then again the scenes of mourning in ‘Alceste’, among the noblest in all opera; the excited choruses of the people in ‘Iphigénie en Aulide’, the Scythian choruses and dances in ‘Iphigénie en Tauride’, the scenes of Orestes’s madness—what inspiration, what poetry, what dramatic intensity are here! Note too how Gluck, in the overture to the first ‘Iphigénie’, discloses the forces and passions governing the play which are later to be worked out in the drama, thus creating the perfect example of the opera prelude. His triumph was inevitable. To deal the collapsing Metastasian Renaissance-opera a mortal blow was easy; but Gluck by his reforms overthrew the French conventional heroic opera as well. True, his imitators inherited little more than the soulless shell of his creations. The

great choral scenes, the ballets, the declamatory pathos became more and more shallow in the opera of the First Republic, and in the work of the last of his direct followers, Gasparo Spontini—who nevertheless felt a breath of his genius—led to the empty monstrosities of the Empire period. Gluck never had a true successor.

MODERN INSTRUMENTAL  
MUSIC

At the same time that Gluck was writing the works that were to reform opera, and opera buffa was creating its own individual style, while the French Opéra-Comique and the German Singspiel were just beginning their history and offering song a definite refuge in which to try its wings, instrumental music underwent a change of style which may be summed up as emancipation from the tyranny of the basso-continuo and the formation of a new conception of the nature of the sonata.

In the course of its development the figured bass had not only been a method of performance which had brought into complete subjection every form of concerted music, solo keyboard music alone escaping; it was also in itself a compendium of the fundamental rules of composition, offering a practical understanding of the functions of sound and instruction in correct part-writing. It was by studying thorough-bass that Bach's composition pupils learned



Euridice amor ti rende

C. W. von Gluck. A scene from 'Orfeo ed Euridice', 1764

their harmony. As appreciation spread of the theory of harmonic principles on the lines first laid down by Rameau, the continuo sank slowly into oblivion. A new kind of melody, a new style of composition arose—not in the solo cantata or solo sonata, which clung longest to the continuo, but in the trio and the quartet. The idea of the continuo necessarily implied a number of voices which were not written out but were left to the player and depended entirely on the degree of his skill. But from now on each voice had not only to play its part in the harmony but also to maintain a melodic line; both claims had to be fulfilled.



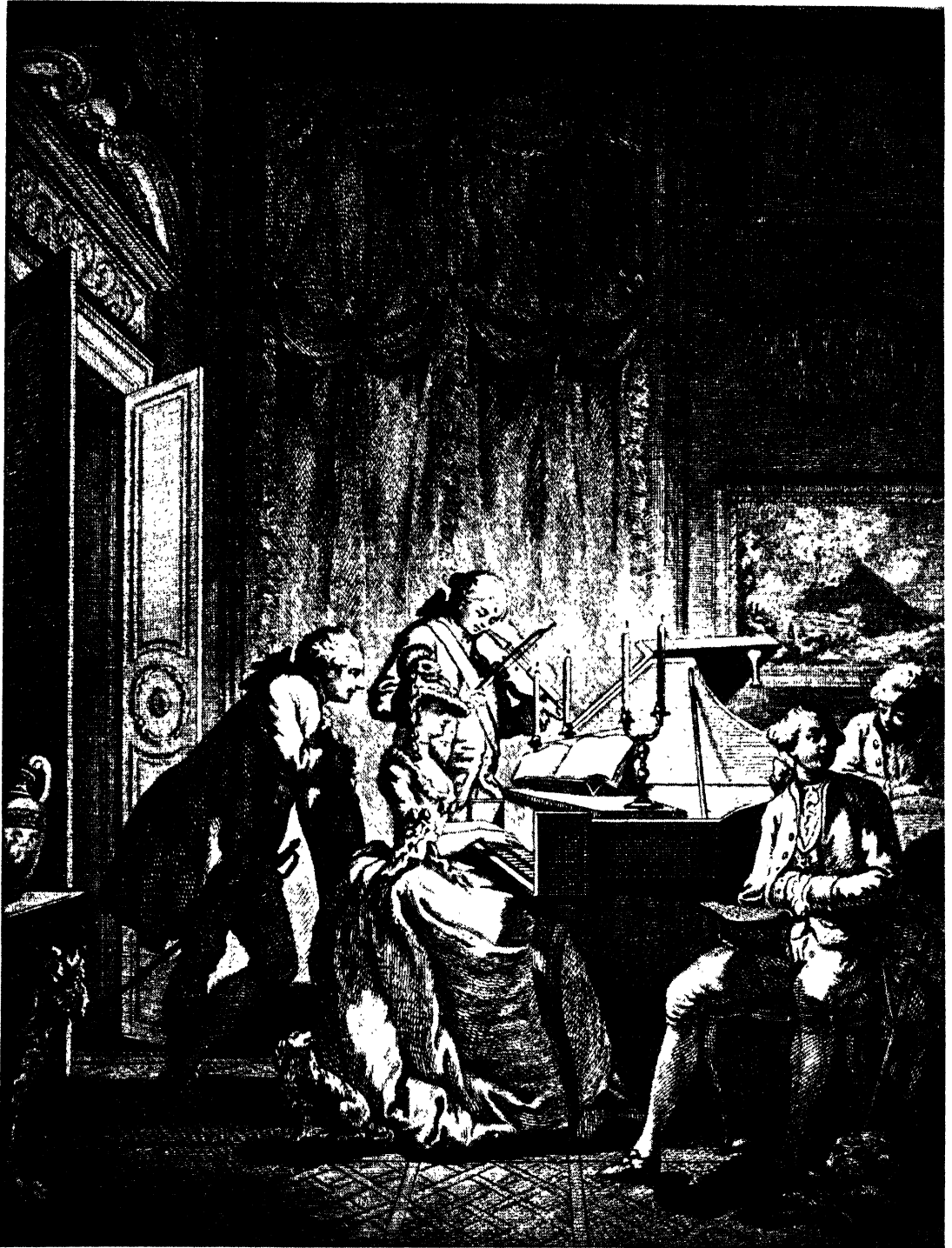
The whole texture gained both in freedom and in inevitability, and the play of the voices—now one springing into prominence, now another—took on an altogether new significance. The 'dramatic' sonata had come into being.

Its nature was new, the laws it obeyed as far removed as possible from those of the fugue; for while in the fugue the first condition is that the theme itself has to be something, the various motifs which together make up the theme of the sonata mean in themselves very little—the interest lies in what becomes of them. While the fugue flows smoothly—its form conditioned by the accumulation or reduction of the voices, its climaxes achieved through melodic-contrapuntal concentration—the sonata is homophonic; the theme it presents is a whole containing its own contrasting elements—separate motifs that can be split up—and strict part-writing no longer plays the smallest part. The factor of contrast is most forcibly developed in the dualism of the first and second themes in the first movement of the sonata, a dualism that has to be resolved in the course of the piece. The first theme may be, for instance, energetic and manly, the second melodious and womanly, and we must be convinced by the end of the movement that the pair have been well and truly mated. The whole cyclic form of the sonata indeed depends upon the unification of starkly opposite elements.

The first movement was the backbone of the new sonata form. Here a fresh significance was gained for the return of the principal theme by force of the dramatic

conflict that had gone before. The second movement, slow and song-like, was given to a quiet expression of emotion; variation-form was here often adopted. The third, the minuet, was a practically unaltered survival from the suite and so represented the tradition of popular art. An independent, contrasting trio was inserted before the repetition. In the concluding movement, the finale, the sonata came to be rounded off generally by the rondo. This had once been a 'galant' piece much favoured by the French cembalists, who attached principal importance to its episodic 'divertissements', which merely alternated with the rondo theme. But in the sonata the interest of rondo-form shifted to an artful hide-and-seek—to the dismissal of the theme and to witty, unexpected ways of re-introducing it. As in the minuet, here again, to wind up the sonata, a hearty folk-spirit prevails, balancing the intellectuality of the first movement; for this was the nature and function of the new sonata, to compose premeditated and unpremeditated art—the life of the mind and that of simple being, the problematic and the instinctive, and individual and communal feeling—into a hitherto undreamt-of harmony.

It cannot be said with certainty where the modern instrumental style originated. What is certain is that the fluent melodiousness of opera buffa quickly made its mark on instrumental composition. Pergolesi, the composer of 'La Serva Padrona', also wrote trio sonatas full of a new spirit and an invention stimulated by operatic melody; and we must not forget Gluck, who was a pupil of Giovanni Battista Sammartini, the



*Chamber Music in France, c. 1770*



G. B. Pergolesi. *b. nr. Ancona, 1710; d. Pozzuoli, 1736*

Milanese composer of operas and symphonies. Just as in Pergolesi's music Neapolitan local colour was characteristically used for the first time, so in the South German, Austrian and Bohemian representatives of the new instrumental music there sprang a fresh source of unsophisticated melodic invention. In his indifference to conventional limits of expression, in the range of feeling in his music and its sudden contrasts, the Bohemian composer Johann Stamitz showed himself so fresh and vital that he may be considered the originator of the contrasted sonata allegro and the intimate slow movement. In 1742 Stamitz came to Mannheim; from this centre his style and

that of his fellow artists and pupils spread so quickly and effectively that from now on the leadership in symphony and sonata was transferred to Germany. Paris—not to mention Italy, where opera was becoming nearly the only object of interest—was taken completely by surprise and suddenly found itself quite out of the running with Germany. The French were still honouring in Gossec a happy imitator of Stamitz at a time when at home Stamitz had already become an almost historical figure.

Symphony and chamber music were not at first strictly separated in the new style. Works were written to do double duty, with simple scoring for chamber music and then with added wind instruments and



G. B. Sammartini. *b. Milan, 1701; d. Milan, 1775*

multiplied strings to serve as symphonies. The changed attitude showed itself in the treatment of the wind. In the older style the wind instruments—flute, oboe, trumpet—had had solo parts and were used in contrast to the tutti; but now they had to take part with the rest, to play if need be at the octave, and generally to provide colour, richness and a solid background. It was a long time before the single woodwind instruments and, among the brass, the increasingly popular pair of horns—the trumpet, meanwhile, having deteriorated almost into an instrument of mere noise—again won their share as soloists in the symphonic scheme and were allowed to have their own say amid the discourse of the strings.

The hall-mark of the new Style, however, was its characteristic dynamics. True, musicians had long before understood how to vitalize their melody by dynamic means for the sake of expressiveness and animation in performance. But with the Mannheimers a wealth of tone-gradations between extremes of fortissimo and pianissimo and abrupt dynamic contrasts formed an essential effect of their art, which they exploited to the point of abuse and deliberate disregard of the natural accent of music. This was the 'Mannheim mannerism' against which Leopold Mozart once warned his son. The triumph of the Mannheim orchestra was its world-famed crescendo, executed by string band with horns. The age of the continuo had in the concerto



*Johann Stamitz. b. Nemecký-Brod, 1717; d. Mannheim, 1757*

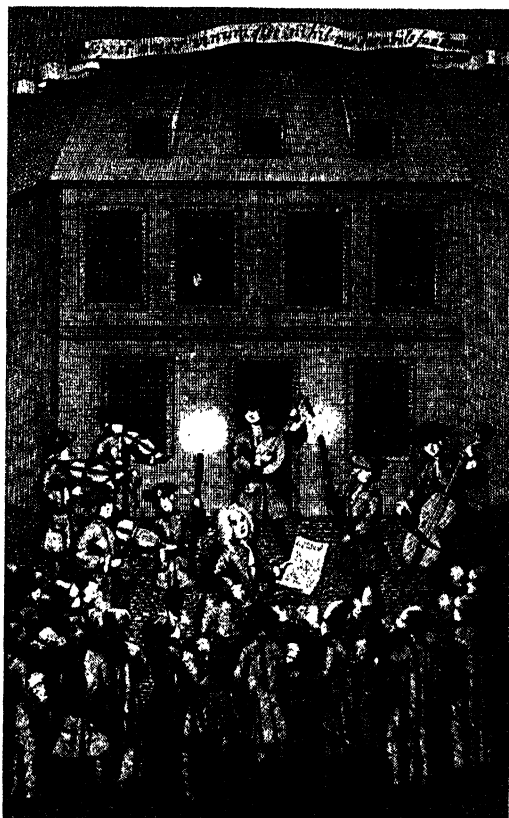
grosso enjoyed full scope for its own kind of dynamic effects, which consisted of alternations of loud and soft, each with its definitely limited volume according to the tone of this or that group of instruments engaged. Now, in the new symphony, the art of dynamic transition provided the degrees between loud and soft. The whole body of strings proceeds with a thematic segment to rise gradually or quickly from the faintest whisper to a roar of sound, and the tension created culminates in a crashing climax. A new world of emotional excitement thus entered into instrumental music, and this new possession, this elemental means of effect, was found to be the very thing for opera overtures, whence its riotous spirit freely spread to the concert symphony. Neither Haydn nor Mozart made use of the Mannheim crescendo in their far nobler and



A Concert of about 1770

more harmonious works. There still glimmers in the dynamics of their symphonies the example of the concerto grosso, with its calmer alternations between the tutti and the more gentle groups of instruments. The first true heir of the Mannheimers was Beethoven who, out of the tremendous tension and tumult of his soul, first produced significance and justification for what with them had been a mere play for effect.

The South Germans, too, and especially the Viennese School, helped in the enfranchisement of music from the basso-continuo with serenades and cassations written for outdoor performance. They brought into their works a fresh, clear stream of simple melody. The North Germans failed to take this step towards a popular style and consequently lost contact—until the coming of Brahms—with the march of great instrumental art, although they had produced a leader and innovator in the person of Bach's second son, Carl Philipp Emanuel. Fruitful and many-sided though his whole production was, C. P. E. Bach exerted his strongest influence through his clavier sonatas. This music presents the most luxuriant testimony of the Age of Sensibility. It is full of sighs, echoes and tearful effusions, yet in the quick movements also full of surprises and unconventional, not to say coquettish, details. In this he was the pupil of the greatest Italian instrumental composer of the eighteenth century, Domenico Scarlatti, whose harpsichord sonatas, in their wit, humour and originality, remain unrivalled to this day. For Bach the clavichord was an instrument of universal significance, his sonata a vessel of endless capacity. He introduced into it



*An early eighteenth-century serenade*

elements from the concerto and the symphony and, according to his mood, alternated between formality and rhapsody. His sentimentality was a malady of that period of musical as well as literary ' Sturm und Drang', which had to be resisted by the composers who were striving towards the new style. The three greatest of these, who all in their different ways owed C. P. E. Bach a debt of gratitude, raised and transfigured the affectation of emotion into emotion itself.

A parallel to the relation between C. P. E. Bach and the three supreme masters of instrumental music is presented by the



*Domenico Scarlatti. b. Naples, 1685; d. Naples, 1757*

tentative appearance of eighteenth-century song and the wonderful lyrical florescence witnessed, after a long winter, in the early years of the next century. A little circle of musicians in Berlin, their leading spirit an amateur, first occupied themselves with the revival of song pure and simple. Under the influence of the French Chanson they set their faces against Italian formalism and flourishes and pinned their faith to simplicity and a style racy of the soil. Their aim was to return to 'natural' melody, in other words to discover the melody inherent in the text of a given poem. This meant forswearing all the principles of the aria. In point of fact, practically all they achieved was this rather negative programme. Before the true lied could come into being, there was needed first a corpus of poetry sprung

from deeper and purer sources than the Anacreontic school, Hagedorn's Frenchified wit or Gellert's pedestrianism. It was Klopstock who fired the imagination of Gluck and of Hiller's pupil Neefe, and the latter in his turn passed on Klopstock's spirit to Beethoven. Without Neefe there would have been no 'Adelaide'. The true spring-time of song appeared, however, when Claudius, Herder and the Göttingen circle of poets—Bürger, Hölty, the Stolbergs, and Goethe, the greatest of them all—brought back into German poetry the true spirit of the race. From their lyrics that intimate composer Johann Abraham Peter Schulz learned once more to listen for the tune suggested by a simple stanza and to make melody out of the very spirit of the poem.



*C. P. E. Bach. b. Weimar, 1714; d. Hamburg, 1788*

His 'Trost für mancherlei Tränen' and 'Neujahrslied' are songs that live on to this day as examples of great riches in a little room. His successors, composers like Reichardt and Zelter in the North, Schubart and Zumsteeg in the South, began at length to mark out the territory of the German solo and choral song; they freed the ballad from the flaccidity of the cantata form and cleared a way for Schubert and Loewe.

HAYDN

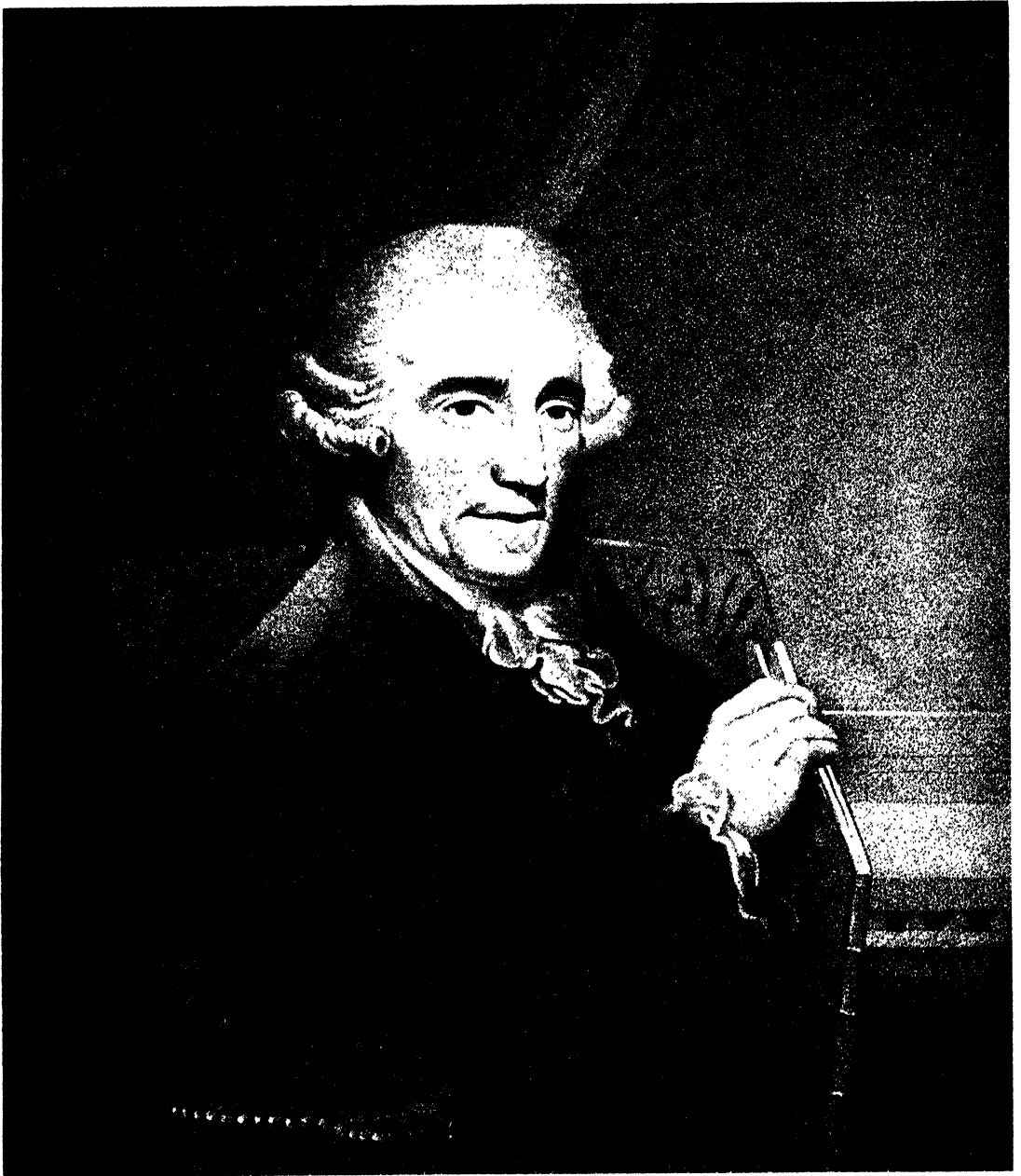
Of the three classical masters the one who most gladly and emphatically acknowledged his obligation to C. P. E. Bach was the eldest, Joseph Haydn. To him nevertheless is due the eclipse of Bach's mere elegance and affected sentiment—one of the benefactions this great musician bestowed on art. Only in the clavier sonata, in which Haydn is not altogether at his ease, is C. P. E. Bach's influence in some measure traceable; and even here it is more technical than spiritual. In his weaker works, which include a proportion of his sacred and secular vocal compositions, Haydn may seem a 'period' composer, redolent of the pigtails and powder of his century. But the proportion of inferior works is very much smaller than might be supposed from the neglect into which they have been allowed to fall; while in his quartets, symphonies and both his oratorios he helped the 'natural man' of Rousseau's philosophy to the freedom of music, and did so without sacrificing a jot of art or intellect.

Of all the great masters Haydn was the one who served the longest and most severe

apprenticeship, and in this, as in everything else, he had himself alone to thank. The son of a poor wheelwright in Lower Austria, he grew up among artisans and labourers, and no one cared whether there were the makings in him of more than a chorister or a street fiddler. That irresistible urge of his to make music he had to nourish upon the merest crumbs of theory, painfully picked up for himself. But his contrapuntal instinct was so strong, his vein of melody so un-failing, that his works pleased from the first and rapidly paved the way for him to the post of Kapellmeister in the household of one of the many music-loving members of the Austrian nobility. In the isolation of Eisenstadt and Estoras, where he was obliged continually to provide new music for his princely employer, and in constant intercourse with a by-no-means meagre orchestra, Haydn developed the original invention, the freshness and sincerity of his melodic style, and the many-sidedness of his musical form, the things that made him the sanest and most spontaneous of all the great masters.

He worked slowly and circumspectly. His first actual symphony known to us dates from his twenty-seventh year. During the next twelve years his symphonic output—even if we assume that much has been lost—barely amounts to four symphonies a year. Each one of them is a witness to earnest and independent effort and adventure. How easy it would have been for him to take over ready-made forms and any number of details of melodic, dynamic and orchestral technique from his forerunners and contemporaries! He despised them.





*F. J. Haydn. b. Rohrau, 1732; d. Vienna, 1809*

What prevailed with them was affectation of feeling and facile cumulations and climaxes—games played for their own sake; but with him, strength and serious purpose and a creativeness sprung from vital experience and shaped according to a secret plan. Instead of frivolous trifling he had wit and humour; instead of their toy counters his coin was the full-weighted gold of thought.

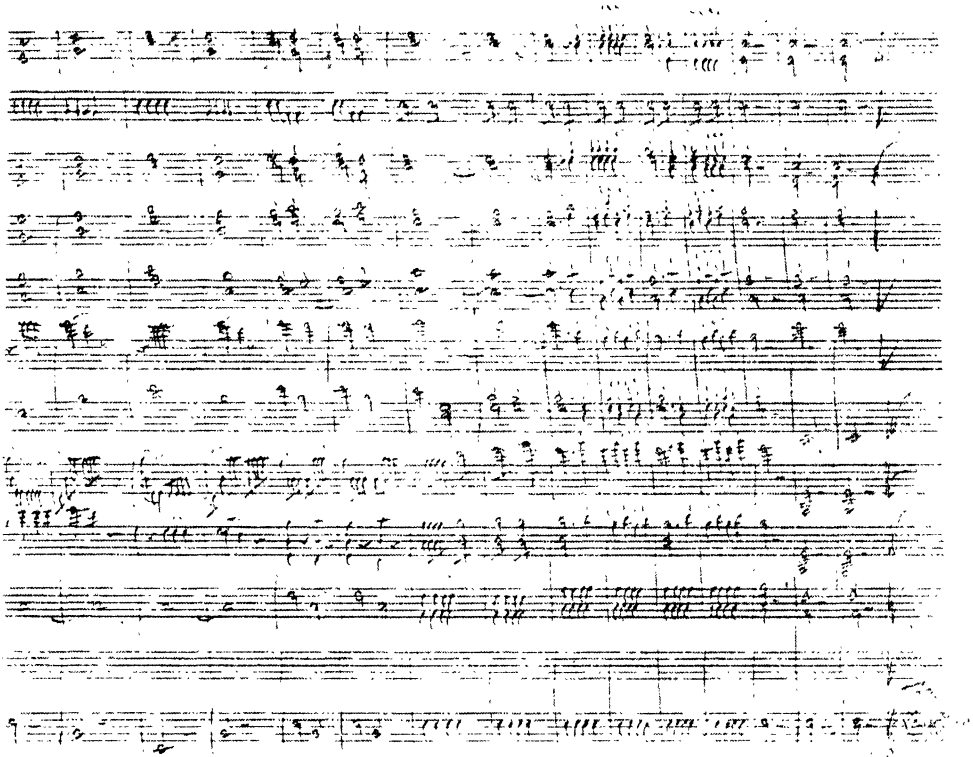
Haydn was already celebrated in Paris as a composer of symphonies and quartets and was nearing his sixties when he made the great discovery of his life—the principle of thematic development in the ‘working-out’ section of sonata form. He had declared his principle to the world in the year 1781 in the six ‘Russian quartets’, which he himself described as being written in ‘quite a new and special way’. With Haydn’s predecessors, and in his own earlier works, that section of a sonata movement after the double bar and before the return of the principal subject in the tonic had seldom been more than an episode which proceeded by sequences to a modest little melodic digression and was soon home again. Haydn now made of the development section the core and focus of the sonata movement. His ‘new and special way’ consisted in drawing out and putting to the test the forces latent in his group of themes, and thus giving an altogether new meaning and value to the recapitulation and thence to the whole melodic action of the sonata. He began to invent motifs with a view to their use in the development section. Already in the exposition of the theme each part in the quartet becomes independent, thinking its own thought as it pursues the main theme



*F. J. Haydn. String Quartets, op. 17, c. 1772*

in its transference from voice to voice, and yet not deviating from the subject of the debate. Then in the development the melodic material becomes involved in positively dramatic action, engineered by the composer’s superb command of a combination of strict and free style. Here was a new application of counterpoint by which instrumental music won, as it were, its ‘third empire’ and infinite enrichment of its consciousness and independence.

Not that Haydn discarded the principle of strict polyphony. He had all along known how to write counter-subjects that were true melodies and, finding examples of fugal movements in works of the Vienna and Mannheim schools, he adopted these with characteristic ardour and spirit. In the



*F. J. Haydn. Autograph of 'Drum-Roll' Symphony, 1795*

symphonies of his critical decade he clearly revelled in problems of strict form—in an adagio in double counterpoint, in an andante worked in canon. Later on, when he was absolute lord and master and the strict style his very obedient servant, it amused him to apply it to his most light-hearted movements, to his minuets and the humorous passages of his finales. So did Haydn triumph equally over the 'elegant' style of his century and over its contemporary antithesis, the 'learned' style, which during the homophonic vogue had lost touch with true polyphony.

Then in the decade following the 'Russian quartets' he found a fresh source of incite-

ment and instruction in the work of his greatest contemporary, Mozart. This he assiduously studied and, without imitating it, built upon it new creations. His thematic material now became simpler and at the same time richer and sweeter. A homely songfulness flowed into his melody, and he delighted in producing out of the simplest idioms those wonders of multi-form expression characteristic of the sonata developments of his maturity. This last and ripest Haydn knew better even than Mozart the secret of giving to a whole quartet or symphony that mysterious unity which makes its four movements seem to us like different aspects of a simple, vividly



*F. J. Haydn. An illustration from the Paris edition of 'The Creation', 1801*

characterized being, renders every one of these works unmistakably distinct from any other, and convinces us that each finale is the inevitable outcome of the whole preceding musical action, forming its *dénouement* and joyous consummation. He himself spoke of 'moral characters' delineated in his symphonies, and his contemporaries thoroughly appreciated this characteristic content which they sought to define by bestowing special designations and nicknames on different works and movements.

While the first movement of the sonata developed its perfected form in Haydn's hands, the second he deepened with emotion from a generous heart and with hymn-like song. An immortal example is the 'Emperor's Hymn', which he made use of in a magnificent set of variations in one of the string quartets. And what a different thing is his minuet from the mincing or pompous movements, powdered and bewigged, with which his contemporaries concluded their symphonies! Here he frolics and makes merry, sets dancers' toes a-tingling and can burst out with roaring humour; but also he can strike those notes of seriousness, indignation and rage which lend the third movement a full symphonic weight and without which Beethoven's Scherzo might never have been. His trump cards, however, he saved for his finales. The wealth of high spirits and wild-fire movement, the humour and the vital union of law and liberty that are here represent a summit of art where Haydn stands alone. Haydn's quartet and his symphony are a supreme achievement of the human mind—a heritage which the glib epithet 'Papa'

has all too long caused to be underrated.

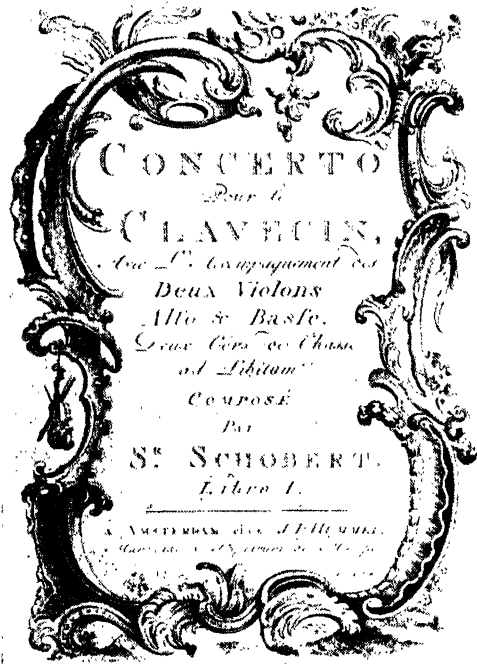
In his two oratorios, 'The Creation' and 'The Seasons', the master of instrumental music was greatly influenced by the Handelian model from which, however, the result was far removed, since in the meantime the development of symphonic writing, the relation of the accompaniment to the vocal line, the new feeling for Nature—which in music had above all found utterance in orchestral commentary—and the expansion of opera and singspiel at Mozart's hands had transformed the whole spirit of things. Between Handel's oratorios and Haydn's came all the gains of music's 'storm and stress' period. Haydn conquered for himself the style of his oratorio and its sublimity, and 'The Creation' thus represents a landmark in the history of the form.

#### MOZART

Mozart had not the time for a slow and steady development such as benefited Haydn's life-work. All that is contained of human destiny within the limits of a short life of not quite thirty-six years is indicated by that dreadful descent, which leads from the pampering of the child prodigy by the courts of Europe to the begging letters of the last years in Vienna and his burial in a pauper's grave. The vital energy, lacking in Mozart for the shaping of his career, in spite of his keen eye for men and conditions, was consumed wholly in artistic 'speculation'; for indeed his good genius did everything that was required for the purpose of fulfilling his artistic mission. Mozart was the son of an excellent musician who as an



*C. F. Abel. b. Cöthen, 1725; d. London, 1787*



*Johann Schobert. Piano Concerto, Amsterdam, c. 1765*

instrumental composer represented the good average of his time; he recognized his child's uncanny gifts and did not, at least consciously, misuse them. The boy grew up where South German symphonic and chamber music was, so to speak, in the air. At the age of six he went to Vienna. The time between his seventh and tenth years was occupied by an ambitious artistic tour, taking in Paris and London, where the new, free clavier style of Schobert and the symphonic pliability of Carl Friedrich Abel and Johann Christian Bach, as well as the latter's facile operatic principles, were communicated to the boy. At twelve he wrote his first opera for Vienna; at thirteen, with his mind still more matured, he undertook his first journey to Italy (to be followed by

two others) and took his place as a rival in the ranks of the Italian opera-composers representing the latest Neapolitan tendencies. His journey to Mannheim and Paris, which may be regarded as the last of his apprenticeship, brought him into touch with experiments in national German opera and with Gluck's operatic ideal, half accommodated to and half forced upon French tendencies.

Mozart's training was a spiritual process such as only a miraculous artistic organism could venture upon and overcome. The acquaintances he made with new forms of art and new individualities were the true experiences in Mozart's development, which in his boyhood still resulted in frequent acceptance of influences of all sorts, good and bad, so much so that the youthful composer's style was subject to iridescent changes from work to work; indeed as a ripe master he continued to take delight in assuming a stylistic mask foreign to him. Before long, however, a complete sublimation and new formation of alien artistic peculiarities occurred, a continual absorption of sympathetic elements. The result was an incomparable melodic richness and taste, a musical and spiritual flexibility, a formal assurance and clarity that has not its equal. This clarifying affected not only the structure of his instrumental and operatic forms but also the inner texture of his musical idiom. Never has the natural strife between homophony and polyphony, between melody and counterpoint, been more completely settled. This most spontaneous of melodists appears to have had polyphonic expression at his command as a



*W. A. Mozart. b. Salzburg, 1756; d. Vienna, 1791*



gift of nature, for all that its acquisition demonstrably cost him some pains in his youth.

No species of music current in his time was left untouched by Mozart, none is without a matchless contribution from his pen; but it was his work in the domain of opera, symphony and chamber music that was to be most influential. In the matter of opera, it is true, discrimination is indicated. Most of his 'serious' operas fall into the period of his youth, and however astonishing a maturity in vocal and orchestral modelling they may often betray, they are still the work of a boy and follow the unhealthy principle of the latest—the so-called third—Neapolitan school, with its sketchy treatment of recitative, its empty pathos and, to use a contemptuous phrase of Gluck's, its constant 'smelling of music'. Then 'La Clemenza di Tito', although Mozart's last operatic creation, was a work thrown on paper in haste and under harassing conditions, wonderful in its certainty of style but impossible to awaken to any dramatic life, and in fact not altogether comparable in this respect with many of the earlier settings of the same text.

Mozart's most captivating opera seria, 'Idomeneo', written with the most ambitious care for Munich at the age of twenty-five and held in high esteem in his lifetime, has been connected with the operatic art of Gluck because of some outward resemblances; but in spite of dramatic choruses and ballet music, Mozart shows in this very work, with its bewitching vocal treatment of the arias and concerted pieces and its admirable orchestral details, that the laws

of Gluck's opera had not yet dawned upon him—this did not happen in an altogether decisive way until he produced 'Die Entführung aus dem Serail'—and that he approached truth in musical characterization from an entirely different angle. For Mozart opera seria remained a piece of musical jewellery into the set forms of which he inserted the most precious stones, although for his largest aria forms he preferred those which combine a preparatory slow movement with a brilliant allegro—those, that is, which contain a development or at any rate link up two static lyrical elements. In his best period he produced a whole series of musical gems of this sort, either as extra numbers for operas to which they were foreign or as independent concert pieces. To become a great master of the opera seria Mozart would have required a wholly different development and, above all, a longer life than that vouchsafed to him.

It is otherwise with Mozart's imperishable buffo operas and his German 'Singspiele'. The former reach the height of their species, and indeed far more than that; the latter have, next to their own value, the profoundest historical significance. The history and nature of both species must now be studied more closely.

Opera buffa was, much like the early villanella, whose fate it shared to some extent, the child partly of a spirit of parody and partly of satirical humour. Already the Roman opera of the seventeenth century, and still more the Venetian, was partial to comic servants who derisively parodied the pathetic events preceding their scenes. Then at the beginning of the eighteenth century

# LA CLEMENZA DI TITO

OPERA SERIA

Del Sign. W. A. Mozart

Ridotta per il Piano Forte

DAL SIGN. A. E. MÜLLER



IN HAMBURGO

PRESSO G. A. BOUME

W. A. Mozart. 'La Clemenza di Tito', Hamburg, c. 1795

the opposition to the unnaturalness of opera seria, which had so often formulated itself theoretically and led to its transformation, found vent in the intermezzi that were wont to be inserted between the three acts of a 'serious' opera. Comedy with music has never ceased to satirize grand opera, and as late as the nineteenth century not only did the more refined parts of Offenbach's operetta take sustenance from it, but operatic criticism found its monumental expression and its artistic idealization in Wagner's 'Die Meistersinger'.

Satire, however, did not suffice. Of the two forms in which opera buffa appeared, the intermezzo in two parts inclined more towards the figures of the old Italian *commedia dell'arte*: the captain, the villainous old hag, the amorous and duped guardian with his ward and her inevitable lover, and Pulcinella, were taken over in all their forms. The most famous and still living example of these intermezzi is Pergolesi's 'Serva Padrona'. At the same time, and clearly in Venice quite as early as in Naples, the fully developed opera buffa in three



*Leopold Mozart. b. Augsburg, 1719; d. Salzburg, 1787*

acts took the stage; in Naples rather with popular types with the text spoken in dialect, while Venice before long supplied one of the most fertile of librettists, Carlo Goldoni, who began early to transfer his characters and his half-droll, half-sentimental mixture of styles to the opera buffa, since when it has followed all the small deviations of literary comedy without sacrificing anything of its earlier contents. Thus we find in the second half of the century a variegated mixing and juxtaposition of the elements of classical comedy with its guiding motives of disguise, mistaken identity and recovery, its political and artistic satire, its sentimental family histories, its Offenbachiads, its fantastic displays of magic and fairy-tales, its ancient comedy of masquerade.

No wonder that opera buffa was not long in taking precedence over opera seria. While dramatically it was devised to bring wit, surprise and lively change into play, it also had a musical advantage over 'serious' opera, which had degenerated into a bundle of arias, by its steadily increasing wealth of forms. The intermezzo already, though short of characters, shows the piquant dramatic duet and trio; but the developed buffa opera soon gains introductions and finales in addition to these; the former an incomparable means of exposition, introducing with musical incisiveness several persons at once in some characteristic situation, the latter tying and confusing the dramatic knot with the utmost vivacity for the benefit of eye and ear. This was opera's third triumph over the spoken drama, although the beginnings of the simultaneous characterization of the personages in buffo opera had long been prepared in other fields. The first triumph was due to song itself, which in an artistic sense is truer than mere speech; the second to the revelation of inarticulate secrets by means of orchestral expression; the last to the possibility of representing a scene at one and the same time with a heightened vitality or, if you will, with the utmost truth to nature and with the greatest ideal precision.

Not all buffo composers found this full and ripe form of the dramatic finale convenient. In the work of Niccolò Piccinni himself (Gluck's Paris rival), the most amiable musician among them, we find next to it a mere chain of arias, cavatinas and duets. But this dramatic finale, the prettiest examples of which were furnished



Lorenzo da Ponte. b. Ceneda, Prov. of Venice, 1749; d. New York, 1838

by Guglielmi and Paisiello among the Italians, led—as a reward of enterprise—to a new conquest: the unification of the scene by means of the summarizing orchestral motif, at that time, of course, always entrusted to the string instruments. Thence the step to the abolition of the stylized aria, to the opera composed right through, was, or should have been, by no means a long one. Instead of that, opera buffa at an early stage borrowed, in addition to its own forms, those of opera-seria, and what it thus gained in musical wealth it lost, one must confess, in purity of style. A taste for fantastic subjects and an admixture of the sentimental family play demanded a pair of languishing lovers who were expected to offer the public the grand aria with its coloratura ornamentation. Opera buffa had

begun by scoffing at opera seria; by adopting the da-capo aria the victim in turn enjoyed its most subtle triumph. By 1740 already we meet in Venetian programmes with a separation of the characters into *parti buffe* and *parti serie*, into comic and serious parts; and Mozart's 'Don Giovanni', with Don Ottavio, Donna Anna, the Commandant and Elvira on the one side, and Leporello, Zerlina and Masetto on the other, historically belongs to this category.

Needless to say, Mozart transforms what his precursors contented themselves with making into a conventional mixture of styles to please a public that demanded all the pleasures of opera, transforms it merely by his touch into an artistically truthful mirror of human destiny, where scurrility and mirth are reflected side by side with tragedy and supernatural gloom; or else he



A. E. M. Grétry. b. Liège, 1742; d. nr. Montmorency, 1813



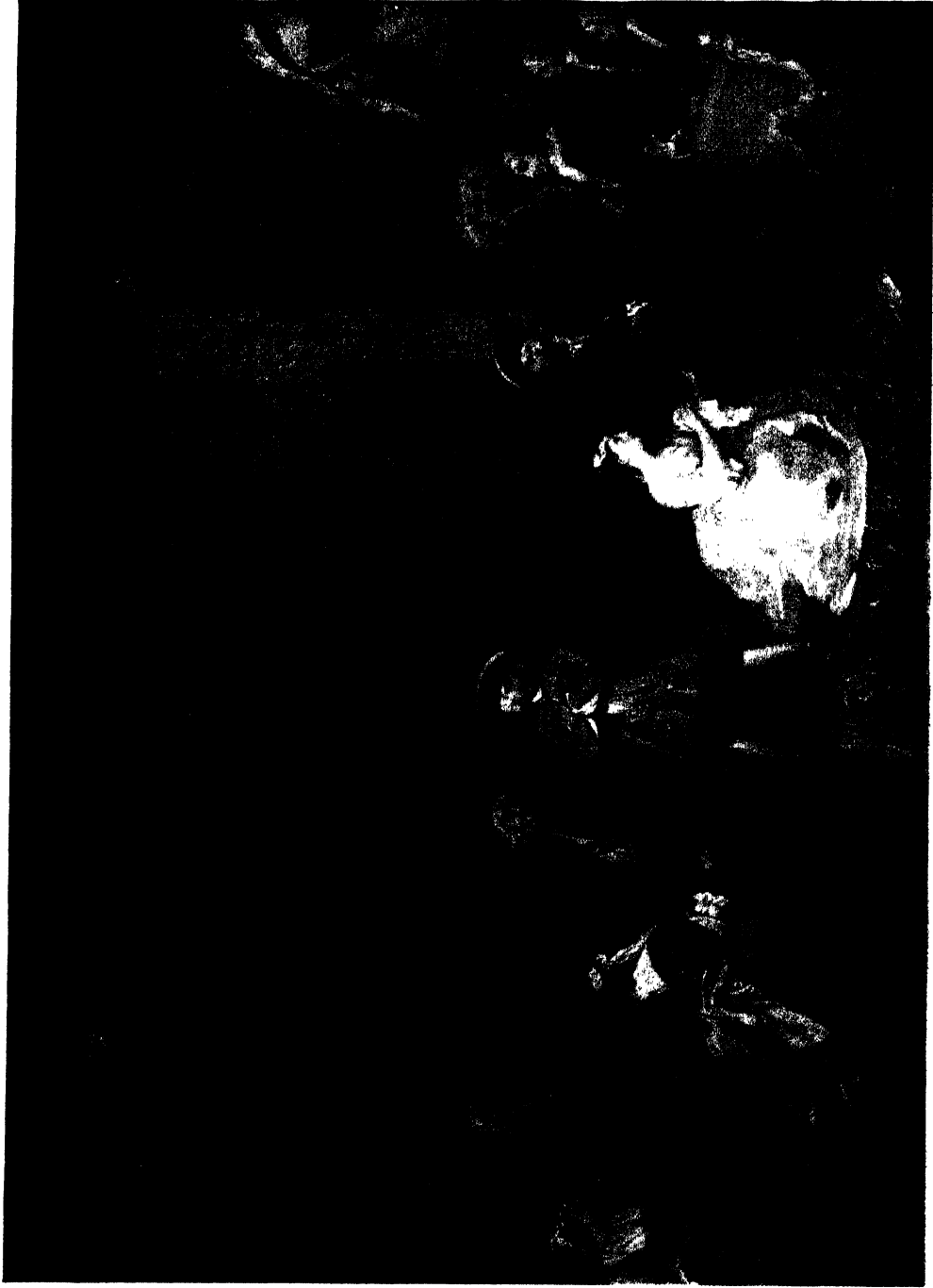
W. A. Mozart. 'Die Zauberflöte', c. 1810

elevates it into the super-sensual and therefore reconciling light of an immortal serenity and grace. In his last three buffo operas, 'Le Nozze di Figaro', 'Don Giovanni' and 'Così fan tutte', for which fortune sent him a clever librettist in the Venetian Jew Lorenzo da Ponte and, in two of them at least, true comedy with living figures and an indestructibly vital heritage of the world's literature, Mozart accepted all the forms of the Italians but recast them in the cleansing fire of his unique musicality. The most worn melodic coin becomes pure gold again, mere formality is transformed into spirit

and meaning. Above all, as a token of tense dramatic life, there is his orchestra—'A mighty number of notes', observed an exalted contemporary; 'Just as many as are required', retorted Mozart—which illuminates the most delicate psychological reactions with unsuspected resourcefulness and refinement, and with its richness and beauty of treatment of the wind instruments marks a new departure.

But the incomparable quality of Mozart's operas lies in the miraculous harmony of perfect musical form with the profoundest dramatic truth and characterization (which





WILLIAM HOGARTH  
*Painting of a scene from the 'Beggar's Opera'*

has given us the imperishable personages of 'Figaro' as well as the iridescent picture of the universe and the moral decision of 'Don Giovanni'). In the musical-dramatic construction of the first act of 'Figaro', in its sparkling first finale, which paints a dramatic and psychological action of the utmost complexity with the greatest truth, depth and clearness, in that tremendous opening of 'Don Giovanni', that point of equilibrium is attained at which the seeming incompatibles of conflicting operatic exigencies appear for once to be reconciled. How enigmatically simple and just is the characterization of the arias! How naturally truthful and yet idealized is, for example, the sweet confusion of the adolescent's

longing for love in the few bars which make up Cherubino's aria and canzone! How each figure in the concerted pieces, from the foremost to the least, the apparently most subsidiary, from the Count to Don Curzio, from Elvira to Masetto, speaks its own language! How consummately clear and bright, and yet so sweet and saturated, is the melodic idiom in 'Figaro'; to what half-shadows and burning lights is it intensified in 'Don Giovanni'; how subtly is coloratura used as ironical exaggeration in 'Così fan tutte'; what a novel employment Mozart still finds for it as a naïve symbol for blind feminine rage in 'Die Zauberflöte'! How perfectly do the overtures paint partly the substance of the drama and partly



W. A. Mozart. Violin Sonatas, Vienna, 1781





*J. C. Bach. b. Leipzig, 1735; d. London, 1782*  
—as in 'Don Giovanni'—the opposition of tragic forces!

Mozart's German operas—'Die Entführung aus dem Serail' and 'Die Zauberflöte'—have a comparatively short pedigree, which this time points to Paris and London. In Paris too the high-stilted grand opera was a welcome butt for ridicule and parody, both for the privileged stage of the 'Italiens' and for the later theatres at the fairs, where Harlequin took all operatic topics as occasions for his satire. In the same way a national protest against the importation of Italian opera assumed a parodistic and much imitated form in London in 'The Beggar's Opera' (1728). Music's share in such works was originally restricted to modest interpolations of songs; but it grew when in 1752

a company of Italian buffo singers introduced two intermezzi by Pergolesi to the Parisians, thus unchaining a violent conflict of opinions concerning the relative merits of buffo opera and national musical plays, a conflict which induced French composers to undertake a musical elaboration of their opéra-comique. Duni, Philidor, Monsigny and Grétry were its most gracious exponents and led it near the beginnings of romantic opera. That the old 'vaudeville' comedy too was capable of accommodating a greater musical richness Gluck proved with the most developed and influential of his comic operas—which also had an influence on Mozart's 'Die Entführung'—'La Rencontre imprévue', itself, it is true, strongly affected by Italian suggestions.

While comic opera reached Vienna in French guise, companies of German actors began by taking over two out-and-out English pieces from the succession of 'The Beggar's Opera'. A new turn was very soon taken by the singspiel, however, when it came into the hands of the librettist Christian Weisse, who was familiar from personal observation with the Opéra-Comique, and of the amiable, cultivated and somewhat philistine Johann Adam Hiller in Leipzig. The contrast between town and country, between pure nature according to the conception of Rousseau and the corruption of the upper classes, was Hiller's favourite subject and gave him the excuse to cultivate a folksong-like melody, a simple form of song, without compelling him to renounce the treasures of an Italianate type of aria. Here too a blend of styles was accomplished when Mozart, along



*W. A. Mozart. Autograph of String Quartet in A, K.464, 1785*

with other Viennese masters, took a hand with his freshly youthful 'Entführung' in what was now 'German opera', which apart from the connecting recitative, now replaced by spoken dialogue, coveted all the fruits of both buffo and serious opera. What again distinguishes Mozart here is his warmth and delicacy as well as the sharpness and fullness of his musical character-drawing. What a magnificent figure is that atrabillious pot-bellied Osmin!

But to all this something new and unexpected is added in 'Die Zauberflöte'. Here the Masonic symbolism, which the librettist Schikaneder worked into his crude but effective play of magic and machinery,

fired Mozart's imagination to the creation of the secular solemnity of that prevalent tone which manifests itself in Sarastro's tranquil strains, the grand choruses of the priests, the airy trios of the three Genii and the hymn-fantasy of the armed men. The transfiguring power of this music overcomes the trite rationalism of the play's meaning and language, rendering its incidents truly symbolic. The whole of German romantic opera took its departure from its wondrous tone. With this one work Mozart gained for German opera a position equal to that held by the idealistic drama of Schiller and Goethe. In much the same way, with a single song that does not exhibit



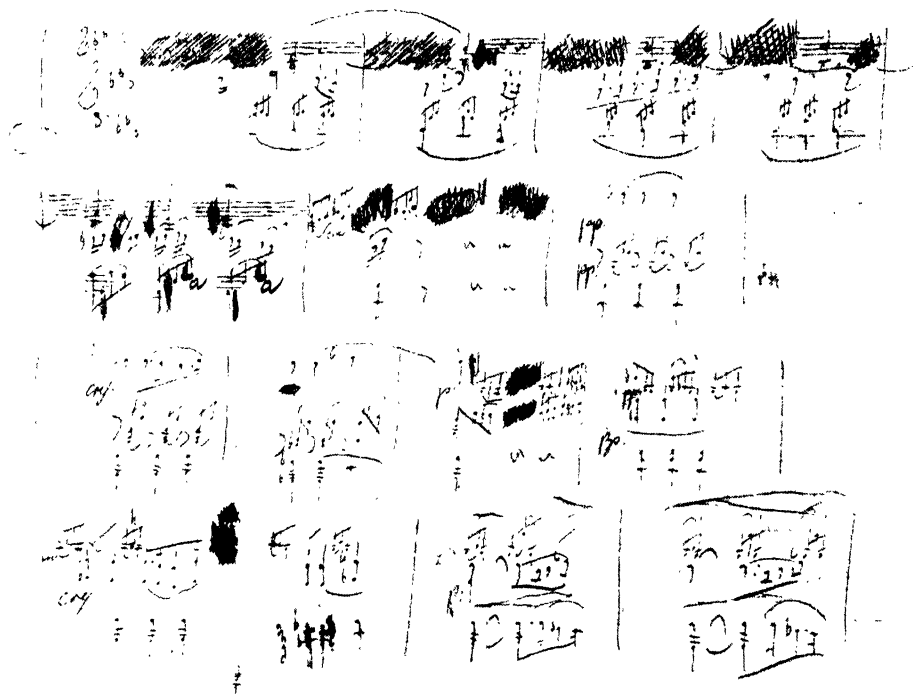
Ludwig van Beethoven. *Piano Sonatas*, Spire, 1783

liedform as we now understand it—his setting of Goethe's 'Veilchen'—he indicated a new and adventurous path to the whole nineteenth century.

As an instrumental composer Mozart is scarcely less great and important; it must even be said that he was originally and essentially an instrumental composer. Much as he did to extend the work of his fore-runners, especially that of Haydn, he yet impressed the stamp of his own mind on every form and species, from the clavier piece in variation-form to the symphony. With the development of sonata-form he concerned himself less than one might have supposed. His especial affection went to the concerto, in which festivity and dramatic spirit, strength and grace are expressed in

the most polished and ingenious manner by the distribution of thesis and antithesis and where, following the model of the 'London' Bach, he treated the second subject—and therefore sonata-form—seriously. Although himself a keyboard player, he did not care for a virtuoso's treatment of the clavier sonata, which he cannot be said to have greatly favoured. He much preferred to associate the pianoforte with chamber music and to use it for the richest combinations with string and wind instruments in order to throw a keener light on his wonderful melodies; witness his quintet for pianoforte and wind instruments, his pianoforte quartets, or his trio for pianoforte, clarinet and viola. But Mozart occupies also one of the highest positions as a master of the string trio (although with a single example), the string quartet and even more, perhaps, the string quintet, much as, here again, he owed to Haydn's example. It is indeed a long way from the earlier instrumental works, with their Italian parading of chords, their rushing passages, their sweet melodic contrasts, to the six quartets dedicated to Haydn, with their wholly personal character, in which 'magic flute' sounds are to be heard already and where Mozart's abundance of melodic force, of form, of artistry is displayed with endless resource.

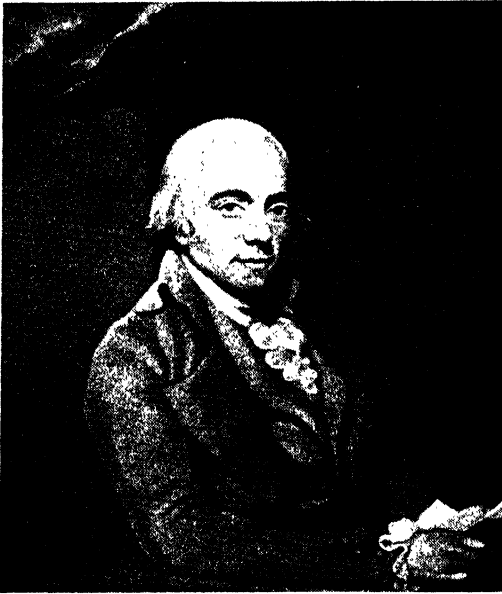
His last and most perfect gifts to orchestral music we possess are the three symphonies dating from the summer of 1788, which embrace such wide contrasts: the E $\flat$ , the most Haydnish in form and content, the G minor, luxuriating in dejected resignation, and the C major, music that rouses



*Ludwig van Beethoven. Autograph draft of Violin Sonata in G, op. 30, no. 3, 1802*

itself to luminous, serene and manly strength. What is foreshadowed in Haydn's symphonic themes, songfulness in the allegro movements, becomes plainly discernible in Mozart. What distinguishes him from Haydn—who after Mozart's death continued to develop the symphonic form still more widely and consciously—is a greater wealth of half-shades and transitions, a sensitiveness to sound that has remained altogether unique and was never again to be attained, and above all an entirely different sphere of emotion, at once sensuous and non-sensuous, hovering between grace and melancholy, indeed often changing colour with a lightning-like abruptness. Mozart draws from a deeper

well than the more earthly Haydn, a well at the bottom of which romantic lights begin to gleam. For that Mozartian 'serenity' is altogether a very strange thing. Not to mention the famous works in minor keys, only those who know certain major movements of his, such as the finale of the A major quartet or the wild, disconsolate mirth of the quintet in D, written a year before his death, and have rightly understood the dæmonic fatalism with which they glow, will see the true significance of the clarity and joyousness Mozart could set off on such a dark background. For them the magical, athenatic melodies, which are a characteristic of the later Mozartian rondo-form and seem to bid the wheel of



*Muzio Clementi. b. Rome, 1752; d. Evesham,  
1832*

inexorable destiny for once stand still, will become a joy that will never fade.

#### BEETHOVEN

Close though Beethoven stands in time to the two musicians whose pupil he was and with whom he forms what is commonly thought of as the classical triad, his name is in itself enough to suggest a new world of music. Beethoven's whole position in regard to life and art was different from that of his predecessors. Haydn had to submit almost all his life to the old conditions of a musical retainer; Mozart broke free from the feudal order of things only to come to grief economically. Beethoven by force of character and passionate integrity stood face to face with the world, a free man. What he demanded of society was the

wherewithal to work unhindered, and he demanded it as a right, knowing how much he had to give in return. He had the Revolution behind him. The great artist was rooted in a great man; nor can it ever be otherwise. Goethe, rightly in a way, called him 'an utterly untamed creature', a judgment which he apparently never modified. But the contrary is really true. Formidable though the natural forces in this man were, his moral strength was yet greater. He, the son of a drunken court-musician and a cook, developed the intellect to apprehend not only the highest and subtlest problems of his age—the age of Kant, Schiller, Goethe—but, what is more, intuitively to master them. He never troubled much about conventional orthography, but in his notes and letters occur flashes of intense perception and laconic phrases perfect in expression. One such is the motto of the Pastoral Symphony: 'Expression of feeling rather than painting'—a phrase that settles the question of the validity of programme music once and for all.

The most terrible fate that can befall a musician—deafness—drove him at the age of thirty-two to the verge of despair and suicide, but he knew he had not the right to leave the world before he had brought forth all those things of which he felt himself capable. Mistrust—worst of all the psychological afflictions of the deaf—ruined his relations with his fellow-men and resulted in conduct in regard to money matters which to this day has left a certain opening for disapprobation. The ageing Beethoven took on himself the upbringing of an undutiful nephew and thereby learnt to

know what pangs may afflict a father's heart. Throughout these trials he was sustained by his moral sense and his unconquerable faith in God's goodness. Just how far the dark currents of his life influenced his music is a question not to be gone into here; but how the tumultuous natural forces of the man were brought into subjection under the empire of his mighty will, were tamed and made the servants of form and order—therein lies the unique supremacy of Beethoven the artist.

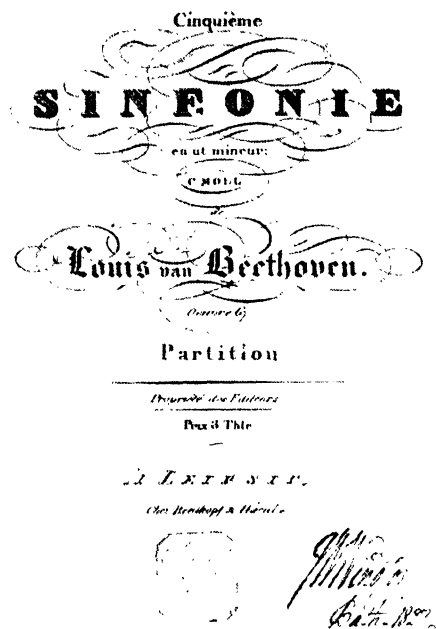
He was as rich in innate musical talent as any of the masters who have been acclaimed as infant prodigies, but his destiny was a development of peculiar arduousness as artist and as man, and he was almost twenty-five before his op. 1, three piano-forte trios, was published. But this op. 1 was one in which the nature of the man was declared in all its originality. From the very beginning the urge and tension in him were greater and mightier than in his predecessors. He explores new depths of the emotions; sorrow and passion are matter in his hands, and the shapes he gives them are his triumphs. Sonata-form seems to have been awaiting his coming; it was now to grow to grand, to titanic proportions, and to be filled with an intenser life than ever before. Variation-form is above all for Beethoven a school of energetic concentration. Again and again he is drawn to it, building on the narrowest foundations structures of the utmost diversity and imaginativeness and bending to the service of his giant will a form that had since Bach's time become frivolous and the toy of executants. How and why his groups of themes strain with

so fierce a tension, the reason for the huge expansion of his developments, for the changes he introduces into the recapitulation, the new role he allots to the coda, the diversity with which he organizes the cyclic form and the significant relationship of the different movements—all this is not to be explained on merely formal grounds. Beethoven's music is poetry. There was something he had to say, the ineffable had to be uttered. The musician, the artist in him was servant to the prophet.

Critics have divided Beethoven's work into three periods, and between 'middle' and 'late' Beethoven there certainly came a lull in his productiveness which also marks a certain change of style. But from the very



Ludwig van Beethoven. *The prison scene from 'Fidelio'*



Ludwig van Beethoven. *Fifth Symphony*, Leipzig, 1826

first his treatment of the matter of music had been poetic and imaginative. The works of the first period speak of the young master's delight in his own strength and of a bold, challenging spirit. Beethoven enjoyed taking up another's theme and showing what could be made of it. Haydn and Clementi, in particular, and Mozart too, were drawn upon for this purpose. But many a movement, many a whole sonata—thus, the trio in C minor, some of the pianoforte sonatas, especially that in D minor, op. 31, no. 2, the first of the string quartets, op. 18, and the second symphony—point to the full-grown master of the 'Eroica', a work which, as a whole, but particularly its first movement, Beethoven himself was never to surpass; in which

purity of form and depth of poetic intention are perfectly matched; in which an invention, a shaping of themes, an art of preparation and transition, all of incomparable power and penetration, are only symbols of an interior conception; and this is not a mere brutal battle, but the very ethos of heroism.

To the prolific period following the 'Eroica' belong works in which Beethoven was powerfully preoccupied with pathos and its sublimation—the struggle with Fate and final triumph of the C minor symphony; the sense of the blessedness of Nature's peace and of divine immanence in the 'Pastoral'; the 'Appassionata'; the profound op. 59 quartets (especially the first, one of the crowns of his whole life's work). Or else the solution is sought in dithyrambic jubilation, as in the seventh symphony. There are also compositions that spring from almost pure founts of strength, joy and self-dedication, such as the fourth and eighth symphonies, the last two pianoforte concertos and the violin concerto.

Mere tunefulness meant, throughout his work, nothing to him. He needed it, but it was to be fought for, not an obvious thing to be accepted. It became, indeed, actually suspect to him, in the conflicts of his symphonic dramas. The whole nature of his work is bound up with the intellectuality of his art. He laboured hard, not because of any meagreness in the flow of music in him, but because he had to realize to the full the ideal of his vision. He wrestled with a theme in its constituent motifs, he rejected and recast, refined melody and rhythm, until the complete and perfect impression was

LA CAVERNE

DRAME LYRIQUE

en trois Actes

*Représenté pour la première fois sur le Théâtre de la rue Feytaud, le 20 Février 1793 (sous le règne de la République)*

(Paroles de Desca)

(Musique de Lesueur)

Gravé par Wagnel

Prix 60¢

À PARIS Chez Naderman breveté, Facteur de Harpes, Editeur Marchand de Musique du Bas  
Rue de Richelieu N° 26 à la Clef d'Or, Passage de l'ancien Cofé de Foi

J. F. Lesueur. 'La Caverne', Paris, 1793



coined. He laboured at building and transplanting, at connexions and path-making; and at length the form answered to the thought. When Beethoven did not quite attain his ends he produced works, such as the Choral Fantasia, which are like buildings with girders still showing through the masonry. A fanciful idea was in itself nothing to him; the greatest daring in modulation or rhythm—and he was the greatest master of rhythm of all the musicians—was only a means to deepen and intensify a spiritual whole.

Entire freedom was his, however, only in instrumental music. After his cantata-like 'Adelaide' he toiled hard at song-writing, achieving mastery at length in his 'Liederkreis'. But his only opera plainly shows how uncongenial the great man found the historic opera forms. 'Fidelio' is a work that stands by itself, but historically it belongs to the category of French Opéra-Comique in the full-grown form represented by the operas of heroism and liberation of the time of the Revolution. Since Pergolesi's intermezzi had excited national ambitions for opera, in Paris 'comic opera' had sturdily developed, most notably in the works of the high-minded and passionately sincere Cherubini; it had gleaned something, too, from Haydn and Mozart's music. While slighter in musical content than Italian opera buffa (it made shift with spoken dialogue in place of recitative) it was distinguished by a more tasteful choice of subjects and a subtler delineation of character. Instead of the rough humour of the Italians it inclined to pathos; the action was free to take a serious turn, and strong and

affecting situations were acceptable. It could, in fact, deal with matters denied to 'grand opera'; its scope was wider, embracing as it did every stage from idyll to tragedy, from the playful to the sublime. Now the heart of the matter of 'Fidelio' is powerfully affecting—the heroic deed of a devoted wife who wrests her husband from his persecutor. For the sake of the chorus of prisoners, the dungeon scene and the tremendous tumult of emotion in the duet following Florestan's liberation Beethoven took on the work, incidentally burdening himself with various minor characters (Rocco, Marcelline, Jaquino, Pizzarro) and musical numbers which were vehicles all too petty for his purpose. That purpose was realized, in all the splendour of unhampered inspiration, in the 'Leonore' overtures, which with his other overtures—'Coriolan' and 'Egmont'—inaugurated a new era of poetic music. The most daring and portentous of the 'Leonore' overtures is not the third but the second.

Creation in the service of an idea becomes fully manifest in those three groups of works which are associated by the media employed as by the sense of the music: in one category the Mass in D and the ninth symphony, in another the last five piano-forte sonatas, and in the third the last quartets with the 'grosse Fugue'. In the Mass Beethoven makes use of the traditional liturgical text for the purpose of a tremendous and intensely subjective disputation between man and God. In its style, in its freedom and recklessness of expression and means the ninth symphony forms an antithesis to the Mass and a complement. From



*C. M. von Weber. Autograph of Flute Trio, op. 63, 1819*

awe, entreaty and unquestioning faith the Mass proceeds to perturbation and unrest. The symphony throws a bridge over abysses of despair, distraction and fond yearnings to the goal of mankind reconciled in brotherly love and certainty of God's fatherly goodness. There comes a point in the Mass, in the 'Agnus Dei', at which the burden of the message devolves upon pure instrumental music; while in the symphony, out of the orchestral complex human voices emerge at last, as the final and most explicit utterance of the composer's purpose. The text of the Mass is for Beethoven a means to an end, just as is his high-handed adaptation of Schiller's Ode.

In the last sonatas and quartets Beet-

hoven's language has undergone a change. The five pianoforte sonatas form a spiritual whole. Form and syntax have an appearance of unrestricted freedom; but to look deeper is to perceive the inevitability of the organization and the relation to the whole of every part. What takes place in this fluctuating and heaving world of sound proceeds in the higher regions of excitation, as it had done in Beethoven himself; and the last quartets speak, if possible, a still more spiritual language. Gone is the pathos of the earlier works; it lies far behind us. Once only, in the heart-piercing cavatina of the B $\flat$  quartet, it returns with multiplied force. Elsewhere when it attempts to put in an appearance, as in the 'schwerkgefaste

Entschluss', 'the difficult resolve', of the last quartet, smiling irony makes mock of it.

In these sublime soliloquies of a lonely soul, ranging immeasurably beyond the confines of his age, the subject matter tends to become simpler and more aphoristic, but the treatment and articulation ever subtler. In fugato, in his 'tantôt libre, tantôt recherchée' fugue, Beethoven seeks to master a new means of utterance at once more intense and less passionate; and variation form moves to the heights of mystical experience. There is no knowing what Beethoven had in mind to give us after these works—he died full of plans for new creations. For us they represent in energy of form and spirituality of content the supremest height to which music has attained.

#### THE ROMANTIC AGE

When Beethoven died in 1827 music already found itself in the midst of an intellectual movement that decided the art of the whole of the nineteenth century and to some extent that of our own days: the Romantic movement. The idea of romanticism embraces such an enormous variety of elements, intellectual and emotional, that it is useless to attempt to reduce it to any simple formula. How otherwise could musicians of such various character and conflicting aims as Weber and Schubert, Schumann and Wagner, Mendelssohn and Berlioz, Brahms, Liszt and Bruckner be enrolled under the same banner? Each of these musicians possessed certain romantic characteristics all his own, while he was at

the same time linked in other ways to one or another of his fellows. The essence of romanticism lies in the incessant absorption of fresh material from musical or outside sources and the moulding of all this into new unities.

There had been romanticism in music long before there were romantic composers—long, even, before the word 'romantic', a literary term to begin with, was coined. The extravagant chromaticism, suggesting a world of subtle emotions, of the last masters of the madrigal; the unfettered flight of Buxtehude's organ fantasias; the passionate poetry in Bach's expression of his longing for death; the chiaroscuro of Mozart's harmonies—all these were foreshadowings of the romantic age. What now happened was not so much a discovery as the choice of a new angle of vision. The spirit of the age regarded the things of art exclusively in a romantic light, and saw in them all only the dazzling enchantment of sympathetic colours.

Thus almost the whole of Beethoven came to be hailed as romantic. The prodigious power of his symphonic works seemed a fulfilment of the oracular saying of the eighteenth-century poet Wackenroder to the effect that instrumental music was the one true art, a heaven that was to be gained by the renunciation of reality. That was one aspect; but there was another. This generation, hearing once more the strains of old German folk-poetry in 'Des Knaben Wunderhorn', found them irresistible, went back to the land, and invigorated its songs at the sources it discovered in the feelings of common folk. Occupational and social singing

MODERN TIMES



*Franz Schubert*

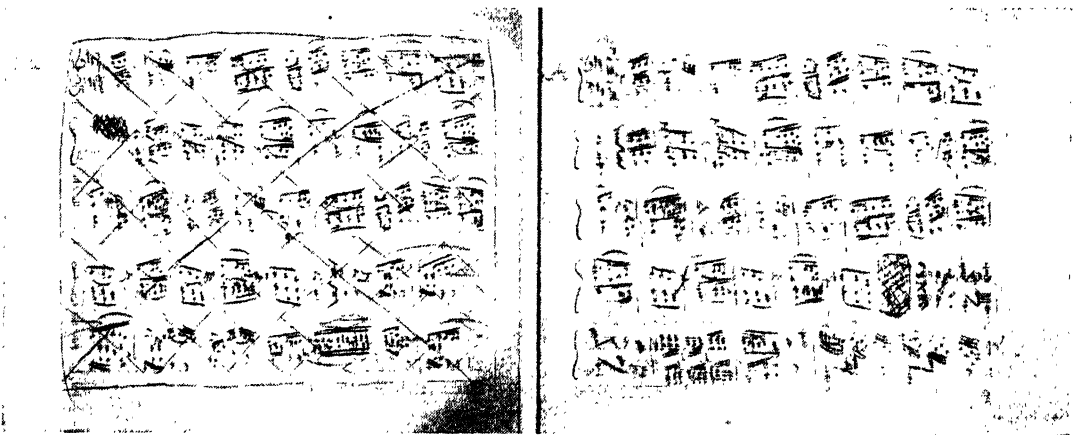
*Franz Schubert. b. Vienna, 1797; d. Vienna, 1828*

( 151 )

gave rise to a new popular song; it was the age of choral singing for the people. Great masters of Romanticism, such as Mendelssohn and Schumann, and many lesser men, chief of them Friedrich Silcher, felt urged to contribute to it. The years that saw the national revival of Germany saw too the coming-of-age of the German male-voice part-song—that manifestation of a longing for national unity and the advancement of the race. Carl Maria von Weber achieved the most accomplished and ardent expression of the patriotic enthusiasm that swept Germany during the ‘War of Liberation’; his songs with pianoforte, too, are stamped, none more clearly, with certain essentially German features. Mystical seclusions, subjectivity, withdrawal from the world on the one hand, and on the other the endeavour to place music upon a wider, popular, national basis—both tendencies belong to the contradictory characteristics of the romantic age in music.

Franz Schubert is the classical romantic. He is a classic inasmuch as he learnt from

Mozart and still more from Beethoven, his master of masters, and entered into the inheritance of the classical forms with the genius that made him the rightful rever-sioner. What distinguishes him from the classics is his mastery in a hitherto unimagined realm, the magical sphere of sheer sound. Here, in the world of pure sound in which they live and move, is the ground common to all the true romantics; here is the bond that links them, the clue to their obscure relationships. Schubert led a middle-class life in a quiet, unpretentious circle. The tragedy of his terribly brief career was that life and the world denied him the activities that might have brought him to full consciousness of his powers; but the smug Vienna of his time was anything but the place for that. So it is that Schubert the instrumental composer lacks Beethoven’s virile, masterful power. Instead of motifs that actually work to build up subjects and make possible the drama of coherent development-sections, he is content with rounded, self-contained melodies and often



*Franz Schubert. Autograph of Piano Sonata in G, op. 78, 1826*

*Adina.* *Erlkönig.*


Handwritten musical score for 'Der Erl König' by Franz Schubert. The score is written on ten staves. The top three staves are labeled 'Piano', 'Piano', and 'Soprano'. The music is in 3/8 time and features a melody with lyrics in German. The lyrics are: 'Der Vater mit seinem Kind / Der Vater hat sein Kind / Der Vater hat sein Kind / Der Vater hat sein Kind'. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings like 'pp'.

Franz Schubert. Autograph of 'Der Erl König', 1816

with amiable episodes that are mere interpolations, leading nowhere but whence they came. His sonata-form can often be found fault with for excessive expansion and mere melodiousness, for lack of concentration and all that Schumann, Schubert's rediscoverer and worshipper, called 'heavenly lengths'. Often, but not always. Not even Beethoven himself achieved anything more striking or more terse than the volcanic climax of the first movement of the symphony in B minor. For that matter, Schubert's apparent failings are only the reverse side of his immortal greatness. His thoughts seem to spring from the primal

fount of sound and melody. While in his dances, waltzes and ländler, his Ecossaises and marches, Schubert the folk-singer pours out the soul of the Lower Austrian homeland, the great Schubert strikes his lyre as the greatest of all nature-musicians and pantheists. To this great Schubert belong the symphony in B minor, that incomparable song of sorrow which we wrong by calling it 'unfinished'; the great C major, with its tremendous trombone calls in the first movement, a symphony that declares Schubert to be Beethoven's peer; the string quintet in C, the quartets in A minor, D minor and G major; the octet; some of the

*Die schöne Müllerin*  
 ein Cyclus von Liedern



gebildet von Bild. Malern.  
 Im Musik. geist.


für eine **SINGSTIMME** mit **PIANO FORTE** Begleitung  
 und dem Hrn. Carl-Freyherrn von Schönstein gewidmet

OP. 104

**FRANZ SCHUBERT.**

25<sup>te</sup> Heft. 2<sup>te</sup> Aufl. Eigentum des Verlegers.

WIEN,  
 C. F. W. Diabelli & Comp.  
 Graben N. 9135



*Franz Schubert. 'Die schöne Müllerin', Vienna, c. 1830*

pianoforte sonatas. In other works, such as the pianoforte trios and the 'Trout' quintet, he inclines to embrace the lighter tones of easy-going Viennese virtuosity. But always he is the inexhaustible melodist, rich beyond reckoning in feeling and fancy, in tone and colour, in the art of his magical veerings between major and minor, and in the discovery by his modulations of depths of the soul never plumbed before.

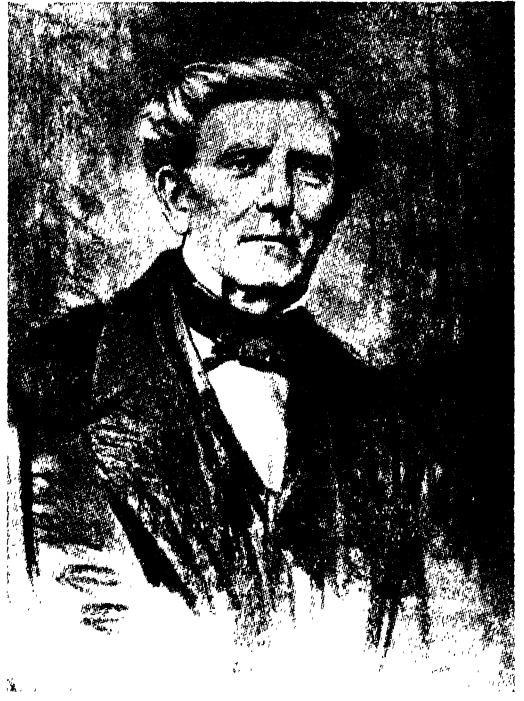
Schubert's songs, however, are his peculiar glory. Here is the vital centre of his creative work. Who would understand his instrumental music must first know Schubert the lyricist. In the use he made of

themes from his own songs (rarely from another's) for the variations which not seldom take the place of a slow movement in his sonatas is to be seen an obvious connexion, but there are others and deeper ones by far.

Schubert composed many accompanied and unaccompanied part-songs for male and mixed voices, in which there is music of wonderful quality; but his real mission was to be master of the song for solo voice and pianoforte, the German song, the Lied, which is so much his creation and Germany's possession that other nations have hardly or not at all an equivalent even for the name.

It is all his own, and is at the same time remarkably related to folk-song. So are wild rose and garden rose akin. Such a piece as 'Der Lindenbaum' from his greatest song-cycle might well return to the hedgerow and become a folk-song again.

He began as a boy of fourteen with imitations of the Swabian ballad-composer Rudolf Zumsteeg, setting to music Schiller's exuberant and vivid poems, Matthisson, Ossian, and much else of the sort that excited his super-abundant, pictorial-musical imagination. This mine yielded both declamatory dross and melody of pure gold. But incredibly soon Schubert found the song-form that was his own. It was his already on the day—October 10, 1814—when for the first time he took fire from Goethe's supreme lyric art and wrote that 'lyrical monody', as it has been well called, 'Gretchen am Spinnrade', his first master-song. This form, the outcome of the relationship between his music and the text, is, to use a figure of speech, not a vessel of gold made to hold a precious content; rather is it to be considered as a line defining a living body. While Beethoven is cramped by a text, it is for Schubert at once an inspiration and a liberation. He can touch profundity in the simplest of strophic songs—take the setting of Goethe's 'Jäger's Abendlied' for example. Indeed, only by compulsion, as it were, and for the most urgent reasons, does his song abandon strophic form; but then, with the utmost sensitiveness and a kind of clairvoyant certainty, he finds for the freest flights of his poets the appropriate flowing setting, compact of musical elements. The supreme wonder of his song is



*Carl Loewe. b. Loebejuen, nr. Halle, 1796;  
d. Kiel, 1869*

the equipoise between imagery and emotion. There is not one in which the mere descriptiveness that reduces the poetry to a bare statement prevails; his pictorialism is always suffused with feeling; his song looks both outwards and inwards, is at once subjective and objective. Between the vocal line and the accompaniment the relationship is never hard-and-fast but is one of sensitive flexibility, though the voice is the predominant partner. His simplest types of accompaniment are eloquent, and so it is that he can plumb the depths with quiet utterance and rise to climaxes of supreme boldness and diversity. What wealth is his in the range of his accompaniment figures alone; what can he not express with the least of modifications! The most splendid





*A setting of G. A. Bürger's 'Lenore', c. 1815*

of his resources is harmonic—his modulation. The 'weite, hohe, herrliche Blick' in 'An Schwager Kronos', the sunset in 'Heimweh', the lover's tears in Platen's 'Du liebst mich nicht', and a thousand other audacious strokes of genius—what a wealth is here of vivid images and at the same time of the vibrations of the soul of man! To think of the miracle of human genius is to think of Schubert. From him nothing is hidden; nothing to him was alien, nothing too lofty, from the plainest of folk-ditties to Schiller's philosophic lyricism, from the clear air of Goethe's exquisite and joyous love-poems to Novalis's mysticism—it is a world as full of emotion as of significant shapes born of an imagination not less rich

nor less creative than Bach's own, a mirror and a record of his sensibility in all its delicacy, truth and power. Most mature and most deeply affecting are the works composed towards the end of his short life: 'Die schöne Müllerin' and 'Die Winterreise', both settings of verses by Wilhelm Müller, and each a veritable tragedy in the form of a succession of brief lyrics. He exhausted the realm of the lied; all that the nineteenth century could do after him was to apply to song-writing some of the new refinements of musical style. Schubert has been unsurpassed to this day.

He occupied himself seldom, and then not very characteristically, with a form of poetry that is rooted more strongly in the

MODERN TIMES

Handwritten musical score for String Quartet in E flat, measures 1-12. The score is written on four staves. The first staff contains the first violin part, the second staff the second violin part, the third staff the viola part, and the fourth staff the cello and double bass parts. The music is in 2/4 time and features a variety of rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and rests. A dynamic marking of *mf* is present in the first staff. A fermata is placed over a note in the first staff at the end of the first system.

Handwritten musical score for String Quartet in E flat, measures 13-18. The score is written on four staves. The first staff contains the first violin part, the second staff the second violin part, the third staff the viola part, and the fourth staff the cello and double bass parts. The music is in 2/4 time and features a variety of rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and rests. A dynamic marking of *mf* is present in the first staff. A fermata is placed over a note in the first staff at the end of the second system.

*Allegro non troppo*

Handwritten musical score for String Quartet in E flat, measures 19-24. The score is written on four staves. The first staff contains the first violin part, the second staff the second violin part, the third staff the viola part, and the fourth staff the cello and double bass parts. The music is in 2/4 time and features a variety of rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and rests. A dynamic marking of *mf* is present in the first staff. A fermata is placed over a note in the first staff at the end of the third system.

Felix Mendelssohn-Bartholdy. Autograph of String Quartet in E flat, 1823



*Felix Mendelssohn-Bartholdy. b. Hamburg, 1809;  
d. Leipzig, 1847*

popular feeling of the northern nations and reflects that feeling with more variety and colour than any other—the ballad. Rediscovered in eighteenth-century England and won for Germany by means of Bürger's 'Lenore', it quickly attracted the efforts of the late eighteenth-century song-composers who, however, despite all their experiments—many of them curious—with strophic melody and with elements of the cantata, failed to hit upon the combination of resources proper to melodrama. That was reserved for Carl Loewe. When little more than twenty years of age (1818) Loewe discovered with one miraculous stroke the true form of the musical ballad, rendering it capable of rich variety and descriptiveness without abandoning the ground of simple strophic construction. He had not Schubert's universality, although he also com-

posed orchestral works, operas and especially oratorios. If Schubert's music sprang from the soul of the people and yet was able to achieve the highest and most individual expression, Loewe's was rather for the people—often indeed merely for the public—and was not great enough to rise above an operatic kind of melody and a mere fanciful descriptiveness. But in the realm of lyric poetry he helped a certain romantic tendency, which we shall meet with again in opera, to find its particular expression—the tendency towards gruesomeness and an interest in the spirit-world, as well as the cult of Catholic mysticism and legend. No picture of the romantic movement would be quite complete without him.

If Schubert is the romantic classic, Mendelssohn is the romantic classicist. The romantic is, in Mendelssohn, the better part. Posterity has to thank it for his imperishable music to Shakespeare's 'Midsummer Night's Dream', for his elegiac tone-poems in the form of concert overtures—above all 'The Hebrides'—and his setting of Goethe's 'Die erste Walpurgisnacht', his finest choral work; for the elfin, scurrying scherzos of his chamber music and for part-songs that wonderfully embody the feeling for nature and the tender longings of romanticism. His classicism was the product partly of his natural harmonic disposition, partly of his education, which was more comprehensive than that of the great musicians before him and of a different kind. He was a master of form. He had no inner forces to curb, for real conflict was lacking in his life as in his art. The melodic idioms in which his feeling was expressed have been imitated too



Felix Mendelssohn-Bartholdy. 'Elijah', Leipzig, 1847



*E. T. A. Hoffmann. b. Königsberg, 1776;  
d. Berlin, 1822*

much and therefore cheapened. But his instrumental and vocal works alike are masterpieces of refinement, lightness, clarity and control.

Moreover, in Mendelssohn there appeared for the first time in romantic music the material elements of earlier music—historical re-creation. Just as romanticism in literature and in the pictorial and plastic arts rediscovered the Middle Ages, so in music it steeped itself in the mysterious art of Palestrina. It was Mendelssohn himself who brought Bach's 'St Matthew Passion' to life again after a century's sleep. He admitted into his music the powerful simplicity and the contrapuntal style of Handel and Bach—without, it must be said, being able to assimilate it. He had to suffer it as a foreign element in his musical language, as

too he merely adopted Beethoven's sonata-form, without replenishing it or renewing it. Similarly his two chief works, 'St Paul' and 'Elijah', remain in style and intention the witness of a compromise. Yet to him belongs the honour of having been the first to face the responsibility that music's great past imposed—a difficult problem, and one that hardly any serious composer could any longer evade. At this time Karl Prose visited Italy to collect the finest of the old Italian masses and motets as an example to set before the composers of the degenerate sacred music of the age; and a romantic monarch on a Protestant throne, Friedrich Wilhelm IV, took an interest in Catholic music. The eighteenth century had indeed begun to study the works of the past scientifically, but from a merely antiquarian point of view. Modern musicology is to a great extent a child of the romantic movement. It regarded itself in Mendelssohn's time as a servant of art and, full of enthusiasm, turned especially to the supposedly pure a-cappella music of the sixteenth century. Only in its second period did musicology thoroughly justify its existence as an independent science and attempt to shed light on the darkness of the past, to sift material, and by means of reprints to save what was in danger of oblivion. Since then the danger has been that living music might become over-saturated in history. The bond between science and art will only be properly established when, instead of imitation of earlier forms, the principles of the great composers are recognized and from that recognition springs creative art.

While Mendelssohn's extraordinarily



Robert Schumann. 'Waldscenen', Leipzig, 1850



Robert Schumann. b. Zwickau, 1810;  
d. Enderich, nr. Bonn, 1856

early maturity determined his career from the very beginning, it was not until comparatively late and then after conflict and doubt that Robert Schumann arrived at music. That may have been a disadvantage for the musician but it was an immeasurable advantage for the romantic tone-poet. It is a tenet of romanticism that the formal realization of all the arts converges on an invisible centre; and so it was that with the romantic movement there appeared for the first time those dual talents which, if one of them does not preponderate definitely over the other or if they are not, as in the case of Richard Wagner, trained with tremendous energy to a single end, can destroy their possessors. The musician who was nothing more than a musician disappeared with the romantic movement. The fanciful

or fantastical standard-bearer of the whole movement in Germany, E. T. A. Hoffmann, was at once painter, musician and poet. As a poet he gave almost exhaustive expression to the longing and desire not only of the first, naïve romanticism but also of the second, the so-called new, romanticism; while as a musician he had to content himself with imitating Mozart. As a poet, however, his influence on Schumann and Wagner was very great. These two represented, in different directions, the musical fulfilment of what he had foreseen and hoped for.

Schumann began as the youthful champion of romanticism. He found the musical world, shortly after the death of Beethoven and Schubert, whom he worshipped, sunk in the feebleness and self-satisfaction of the Restoration period—in opera, partly in the superficial, sensuous melody of Rossini and his imitators, partly in the unscrupulous ‘grand’ Parisian style; in chamber and concert music, in the empty virtuosity of the Parisian or Viennese schools; in musical criticism, in pedantic formalism. Then he founded, at the age of twenty-five, the *Neue Zeitschrift für Musik*, in which with truly creative and poetical criticism he accorded the great masters of the past their due, and cut a path for all that he discovered that was new, fresh and original. Thus he introduced Chopin and Berlioz into Germany as effectually as he gave vent to his hatred for Meyerbeer’s repulsive operatic humbug. Pianistic virtuosity he defeated with its own weapons. His earliest and finest works—and he wrote, until his op. 23, only for the pianoforte—present



*Robert Schumann. Autograph of Piano Sonata in F minor, op. 14, 1836*

technical problems at least as difficult as those of the virtuosos; but in his music technique is the servant of a richly fertile poetic imagination. The exuberant and rapturous emotional world of Jean Paul, the fantastical dream-world of E. T. A. Hoffmann find expression in his 'programme music'. Here is an alternation and repetition of minute images, woven out of spirited dance and tender song, hovering between profound seriousness and pointed robust humour, between graceful charm and a 'smiling through tears', made one through a mysterious poetical bond and full of secret allusions. And all this is clothed in a wonderfully rich and subtle pianoforte style, which now dissolves the

melody in arabesque, now plunges it into a middle voice, now sets it dancing on the peak of the figuration or scurrying through all the voices. It was the new and perfect form and technique of a new poetic-musical ideal.

From the pianoforte Schumann went on to the conquest first of the lied and of chamber music, then of the orchestra and chorus. There lived in him not only the subjective disciple of Jean Paul; he felt, too, an urge towards great art, together with the romantic consciousness of the duty of cultivating a connexion between art and the home. If he did not achieve his object, the insidious illness which had threatened him already as a youth and which caused his



premature death must be held responsible. Or did the feeling that he had imposed too great a strain on his creative powers cripple his imagination? In each of the fields of music into which he ventured, his first essay was almost always the most successful. His first songs, in which his exuberant but also shy and tender nature reveals itself in the characteristic postludes of the accompaniment, are also his best, and best of all are those in which he was inspired by poetry of so genuinely romantic a nature as Eichendorff's, or where he gives melodic expression to his own vigorous folksong-like vein. His first great choral work, 'Paradies und Peri'—'an oratorio, not for a prayer-meeting but for cheerful people'—is his most accomplished. How strong a contrast this forms to Mendelssohn, to whom he, so much the freer, the more original and historically more significant genius, humbly looked up! Only in chamber music and in symphony could he put beside his glorious early works others of later years that equalled them—in the one category the D minor trio beside the non-classical string quartets, with their extreme simplification of form, and the superb pianoforte quintet; in the other, beside the B $\flat$  and D minor symphonies the 'Manfred' music, in which the elective affinity of two spirits of lofty aspiration brought to being a work of true genius. Only in opera was he less fortunate; here another and a greater was to fulfil the ideal of romanticism. And to opera, towards which not merely musical romanticism but the whole movement was striving, there to find its 'redemption', we must now turn.

## ROMANTIC OPERA

The material of romantic opera had long been available. In French Opéra-Comique, in opera buffa, in the German Singspiel, and notably in the Singspiel's coarse base-born brother the fairy pantomime (Zauberposse), all its elements were latent. There had been a number of attempts made in the eighteenth century to create a German national opera, for instance by Ignaz Holzbauer on a German historical subject, and by Anton Schweitzer on pathetic texts by Wieland, dealing with classical antiquity and medieval England. The result, however, was little more than Italian opera performed in German. The movement received its vital impetus from the German romantic spirit which had owed nothing to these experiments but much to Gluck, to the Mozart of 'Don Giovanni' and 'Die Zauberflöte', and to the whole of Beethoven.

What do we mean by the romantic spirit in opera? In the first place it was a question of subject-matter. In spite of the respect felt for Gluck, there set in a revulsion from classical antiquity and with it a growing taste for folklore. Quite a new idea of 'wonder' was conceived. In the older opera it had merely meant fantasy and surprise, an opportunity for stage engineers; in romantic opera it became the moving spirit in everything that happened. Legend and superstition provided a world of marvels, filling the air and exerting horrifying or beneficent influences upon human destinies. All nature's secret forces took on an individual life and were more or less personified. E. T. A. Hoffmann was the first in

MODERN TIMES

*The Whole of the*  
**MUSIC**  
*Consisting of*  
*Overture, Songs, Duets, Trios*  
*and*  
*Concerted Pieces.*



in the celebrated MELODRAME called

**DER FREISCHÜTZ,**

*The* **Shirsh** *- Ballet*

*now performing with unbounded applause*

at the

**THEATRE ROYAL, ENGLISH OPERA HOUSE:**

*composed by Carl Maria von Weber;*

*Arranged for the English Stage by*

**W<sup>m</sup> HAWES:**

*The Poets translated from the German by W. M. Orrey Esq.*

*Tamul* *Sin shall atchieve*

*The strength deceiver*

*Act.*

Page

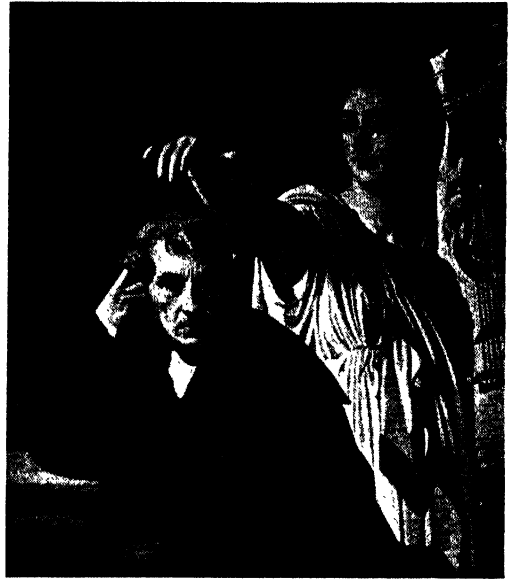


*London, Published by The Royal Harmonic Institution, Strand, near St. Paul's Church, Strand.*

C. M. von Weber. 'Der Freischütz', London, c. 1827

the field with his opera 'Undine', based on Fouqué's ingenuous, pathetic fairy-tale, and in the demoniacal spirit Kühleborn created its typical character. Almost simultaneously Ludwig Spohr tackled the subject of Faust and arrested the attention of his contemporaries particularly with the note he struck in the Witches' Dance. The actual birth of romantic opera, however, must be held to date from the creation of a master musician who by force of a peculiarly sensuous quality in his melodic style was from the outset something more than a mere follower of Mozart. I refer to Carl Maria von Weber and his 'Freischütz'.

Hoffmann was right in saying, after the first indescribably exciting performance of this work in Berlin in 1821, that since Mozart's time there had been two outstanding achievements in German opera, Beethoven's 'Fidelio' and this 'Freischütz'.



Luigi Cherubini. *b. Florence, 1760; d. Paris, 1842*

Here, in 'Der Freischütz', the musician's art is no longer merely draughtsmanship; it is also colouring. Here the German woodland comes to life with all its magic in the horn music of the huntsmen's choruses and all its eeriness in the evocation of the haunted glen; here a born dramatist breathed abounding life into the girlish figures of Agathe and Aennchen, into the weak-willed young huntsman—a truly tragic figure, this—and, above all, created with a couple of strokes of genius the character of Caspar, 'the monster', in Beethoven's words, that stands there like a house'. But 'Der Freischütz' was in point of form only a Singspiel. Weber had higher ambitions. 'Euryanthe' represents his endeavour to establish 'grand romantic opera', the German equivalent of opera seria. The worthy Spohr, an ever-enterprising if not always successful innovator, had anticipated him in



Louis Spohr. *b. Brunswick, 1784; d. Cassel, 1859*

this with his noble 'Jessonda'; nevertheless the historic point of departure is the 'programmatic' purpose of 'Euryanthe'. That purpose Weber himself put into words in answer to a proposal from Breslau for a concert performance of the work. "Euryanthe", he said, 'is a dramatic essay, counting upon the collaboration of all the sister arts for its effect, and assuredly ineffectual if deprived of their assistance'. And again on an occasion when it was suggested that the opera might be improved by cuts: 'With so organic a whole as a grand opera must be, to make excisions is excessively difficult when the composer has thoroughly thought out his work.'

The problem of the unity of opera was Weber's preoccupation, and the efforts it cost him are obvious when we compare 'Euryanthe' with 'Der Freischütz'; but the

result of those efforts was to make plain the way for the greatest of his successors. Weber employed various means of unification. Recitatives, linking the formal numbers of the opera, were in Weber so much enriched in melodiousness, in expressive power and in the accompanying orchestral commentary as to undermine the prevailing system of set pieces. Yet more effective and radical as a means towards melodic consistency was the use of recurring musical ideas at dramatically significant points, both in the vocal and orchestral parts. Gluck and Mozart had already employed unifying basic motifs, in the finer sense of the word, to characterize their personages; Cherubini in 'Les deux journées' had made important use of a motif for associative and evocative effect, and Weber had done the same thing several times with great subtlety in 'Der Freischütz', the finest example occurring in the Wolf's Glen music, when the hapless marksman shakes off his last misgivings before committing his mad act, to the strains from the orchestra of the peasant's mocking chorus. But in 'Euryanthe' this principle was much more deliberately employed, and with the psychological penetration of genius. When Emma's spectral funeral music—already familiar to the audience from the magnificent overture to the work—announced in its transformation at the end of the opera that the sinner is redeemed, the seed was planted from which, at Wagner's hands, the whole form of music-drama was to grow. Wagner did more than perform an act of piety when he began his career at Dresden with a performance of 'Euryanthe'.



C. M. von Weber. b. Eutin, 1786; d. London, 1826

The most admirable aspect of the consistency of Weber's opera, however, lies in its characteristic colouring. This was a quality with which he endowed each one of his operas. It was derived from his singular power, typical of the true romantic, of so handling the orchestra that the individual instruments yielded peculiar and hitherto unknown effects, while colours were mingled in the most varied ways. As in 'Der Freischütz' the secrecy of the German woodland and its dark mystery turn into music, so in 'Euryanthe' does the chivalry of medieval France, in 'Preciosa' the racial traits of the Spanish gypsy, in 'Oberon' the gorgeous fantasy of the Orient and the fairyland of the West. All turn to music, which clothes each of these works in a veil of magical radiancy.

#### OPERA IN THE LATIN COUNTRIES

German romantic opera came to birth with Weber's masterpieces, but it was still far from a complete victory even in Germany itself and in the hearts of German opera composers. 'German opera' and 'romantic opera'—these are really the same ideas. As things were at the beginning of the nineteenth century, Germanism in opera had to express itself aggressively. Thus 'Der Freischütz' was immediately recognized as a counterblast to Spontini, then all-powerful in Berlin, and 'Euryanthe' as a rousing summons to the Viennese, sunk as they were in the worship of Rossini. There was nothing of this aggressiveness in the 'romantic' opera of Italy and France—a proof of its stronger attachment to tradition, in spite of



*Gioacchino Rossini. b. Pesaro, 1792; d. Passy, nr. Paris, 1868*

importations of foreign elements; of the more easy-going way by which it attained its form, and of its internationalism.

In Italy there was a rich aftermath of opera buffa, in which the traditions of the eighteenth century were maintained almost intact. This culminated in Rossini's masterpiece, 'Il Barbiere di Siviglia'. Opera seria, however, took on a new shape, and before long the old type of solo opera was no more. An Italianized German, Simon Mayr, modelling himself on Gluck, Mozart and Cherubini, was the first to make a move in this direction. His imitators, the most gifted of whom was Saverio Mercadante, proceeded to stereotype his innovations. Externally Italian opera became richer, but internally even more poverty-stricken, if possible, than before. Instead of the old string of arias there appeared a mixture of arias, choruses and massed scenes, and

showy instrumental movements. Opera seria now borrowed the ensembles of its less hide-bound sister-form, and the two, in fact, came nearer and nearer in their musical aim. This aim was simply a more or less subtle or crude appeal to the senses. The means employed may have been enriched, but the use made of them was soon as conventional as before. In opera after opera the chorus had its regular task, upstage or down, swearing vengeance or joining in a 'Preghiera' in front of the footlights, and winding up the evening with a jubilation or a lament, while the orchestra is allotted insignificant accompaniments or perfunctory marches and processional music, crude and noisy. It was the era of the first orgies of the brass ensemble—in the orchestra, on the stage and behind the scenes. The Mannheim crescendo, which in Beethoven's hands was a mighty means of



Vincenzo Bellini. b. Catania, 1801; d. Paris, 1835

spiritual expression, became nothing more in the Italian opera overture than a fatuously exaggerated stretta. Only the vocal writing took on more concise and varied forms. The changes were rung on melting cavatinas and a compressed form of the da-capo aria. The emotional expression was concentrated in the vocal line and was enhanced by elaborate *floriture*. It was a heyday of virtuosity in song. Only a few composers, such as the short-lived Sicilian Bellini, with his 'Norma' (1831), rose by finer craftsmanship and a nobler melodic style above this dead level.



F. A. Boieldieu. b. Rouen, 1775; d. Jarcy, 1834

Rossini's works represent this type of opera at its most triumphant. He gained for it world-wide acceptance by force of his truly magical fount of melody. The



*Meyerbeer*

*Giacomo Meyerbeer. b. Berlin, 1791;  
d. Paris, 1864*



*D. F. E. Auber. b. Caen, 1782; d. Paris, 1871*

exceptional singers his operas required—brilliant virtuosos of both sexes, with huge voices—and the business enterprise of impresarios transplanted his work first to Vienna and at length to that centre which ever since Gluck's time had been the principal market for opera in all Europe and the attraction of all composers, Paris. In Paris the new conception of the 'operatic' was finally determined; not in the form of the Parisians' own national opera, the amiable 'conversation opera' of Boieldieu and Auber, which with its wit and elegance was as unromantic as possible, while not disdaining a tinge of romantic colour—not there, but in the international 'grand opera', the first example of which was Auber's 'La Muette de Portici' (1828). Within the next few years appeared the works in which

grand opera was wholly realized—Rossini's 'Guillaume Tell', Meyerbeer's 'Robert le Diable', Halévy's 'La Juive' and Meyerbeer's 'Les Huguenots'. What it demanded were striking subjects, handsome historical costumes and sensational situations; it showed no conception of an organic scheme, but only a variety of such situations in a monstrous five-act frame. It required the most arresting melodic invention, but relegated the inspirations of genius to an arbitrary and therefore inartistic whole. It is these 'effects without causes' that render Meyerbeer's operas, in particular, such detestable examples of irresponsibility and lack of taste.

In Giuseppe Verdi arose the musician whose long life's work was to transcend, though in a very different way from

*Stabat Mater - Quatuor Vocali e Coro*

*S. Alfani*

*Ando Moderato* (♩ = 132) #

The score is written on 24 staves. The instruments and parts are as follows:

- Vocal Quartet (Voci):** Soprano 1, Soprano 2, Tenor, Bass.
- Chorus (Coro):** Soprano 1, Soprano 2, Tenor, Bass.
- Orchestra:** Violini (Violins), Violenze (Violas), Flauti (Flutes), Oboe, Clarinetto (Clarinet), Fagotti (Bassoons), Trombe (Trumpets), Tromboni (Trombones), Timpani (Timpani), Organo (Organ), and Contrabbassi (Double Basses).

The score includes various musical notations such as clefs, time signatures, dynamics (e.g., *ff*), and performance instructions. There are some handwritten annotations and corrections throughout the score.

Gioacchino Rossini. Autograph of 'Stabat mater', 1832-41



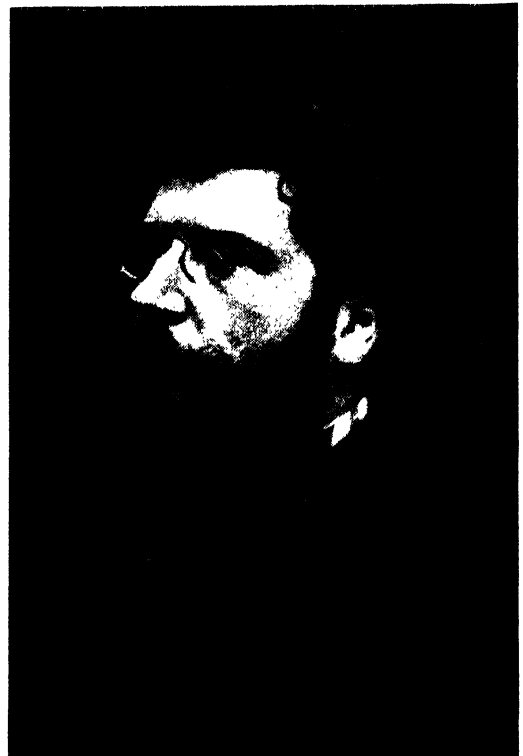


*Giuseppe Verdi. b. nr. Busseto, 1813; d. Milan, 1901*

Wagner's, the false romanticism of the Franco-Italian lyric stage and the pretensions of 'grand opera'. He began rather in the manner of the minor opera composers who won successes in Rossini's wake, especially Donizetti, but from the very outset was distinguished from these by his predilection for fierce and fiery subjects, the simplicity and energy of his melody, his native truthfulness and the striking conciseness of his utterance. His ardent nationalism found its most enthusiastic expression in his choruses, which render his earlier works veritable Italian folk-operas. With the works of his middle period—'Rigoletto', 'Il Trovatore', 'La Traviata'—his fame became universal, purchased to some extent, it is true, by a more pronounced leaning towards Parisian opera. The great Verdi emerged in the last three works, 'Aïda', 'Otello', and 'Falstaff'. Here that forceful

melody of his, always so immediately telling, and his impetuous scenic art were rid of all dross and were directed to their purpose with utter integrity.

Intellectually and musically Verdi stands as Wagner's antithesis. The vast background—not ground, but world—of Wagner's works has no equivalent in Verdi. With him human beings, tragic or humorous, take the centre of the stage, and consequently the relation between voices and orchestra in his opera is totally opposed to that found in Wagner. Verdi's vocal line is the vehicle of the expression, his orchestra is a background. The result is the immediate and irresistible triumph of his melody and



*Georges Bizet. b. Paris, 1838; d. Bougival, nr. Paris, 1875*

of Latin humanism, as opposed to the symbolically produced impression made by the typically romantic relation between voices and orchestra. What, when all is said and done, is decisive is Verdi's grandeur as an artist, maintained indefectibly throughout his best works and not to be judged absent even from the weakest of them, however stern the criterion; his sincerity, his integrity as man and artist, his love of simplicity, his consciousness that simplicity spells strength. The best thing in French opera after Meyerbeer—Bizet's 'Carmen', with its vivid Spanish colouring and its lively Spanish rhythms and melodies—followed directly in Verdi's footsteps. Everything the Italian opera composers did after him he had foreshadowed. Puccini's 'Tosca' had been anticipated by 'Luisa Miller', 'La Bohème' by 'La Traviata'. As for the operas of the 'verists', they really derive from Grand Opera, in spite of the apparent break-up of the old formulas; for here too the success depends not upon a whole but upon an arresting part—some melodic explosion, some material effect; in short, upon some by-product of opera.

THE NEW ROMANTICISM

None of the composers of German romantic opera who immediately followed Weber inherited his universality, and it is remarkable that not one made an attempt to pursue and extend the path indicated by 'Euryanthe'. Kreutzer, Lortzing and Marschner—these three all represent a mingling of the same elements in different proportions. Kreutzer, the eldest of them and the feeblest, had no particular dramatic preten-



*Giacomo Puccini. b. Lucca, 1858; d. Brussels, 1924*

sions, being content to rely on the effect of romantic German melodiousness. Towards the end of his all too short and troubled life Lortzing took a more ambitious line with a romantic opera in which he returned to the material of its exemplar, E. T. A. Hoffmann's 'Undine'. His real importance, however, rests in his popular, or rather middle-class comic operas of a type which, schooled as he was in the more refined methods of French Opéra-Comique, he raised from the dead level of the Viennese popular spectacle and fairy-pantomime, not without lapses into sentimentality and banality, yet with an irresistible blend of humour and feeling and an assured mastery



Georges Bizet. 'Carmen', 1875

of his means. Alongside this poet-musician Nicolai, who sailed his bark in Italian waters, looks insignificant, in spite of the bid for fame he made by 'Die lustigen Weiber von Windsor' and although in actual musicianship he was Lortzing's superior; and the Frenchified and unprincipled Flotow is even more dwarfed. The old mingling of tragic and comic personages characteristic of romantic opera from its springs in 'Die Zauberflöte'—whence

Holländer' and 'Lohengrin' with threads for his weaving.

Romantic opera was the realization of the aspirations of the romantic dramatist. What was denied the literary drama, principally on account of the intellectual and ironic elements which the poets introduced into it—not even Eichendorff kept clear of that—was possible in opera. Richard Wagner's achievements, his development of romantic opera into romantic

*Alma e cantina, Duetto*

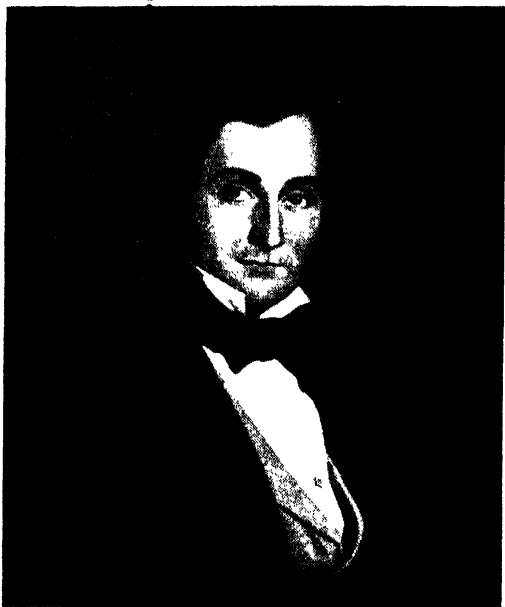
57

Giuseppe Verdi. Autograph of 'Attila', 1846

music-drama, were the culmination of romanticism—that romanticism which saw in art the quintessence of life, surveyed the world solely from the artistic angle and lived the only moments worth living immersed in music. Wagner thus does not belong exclusively to the history of music; Wagner the artist is the incarnation of his age. But before the attempt is made at an appraisal of that portentous figure, a sketch must be given of the two artists who are classed with him as representatives

of neo-romanticism—Berlioz and Liszt, both of whom were his seniors and were actuated by similar motives.

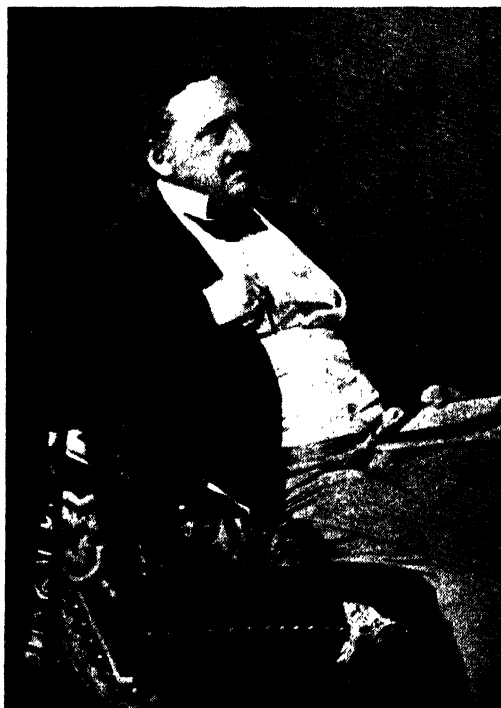
In spite of all the differences between them there is a bond of union between the three neo-romantics, and it links them too with Schumann. This is the consciousness each felt in his own way of the greatness of Beethoven, and especially the Beethoven of the last period. Gluck and Beethoven inspired the musician in Berlioz; the singular and contradictory romanticist in him took



*G. A. Lortzing. b. Berlin, 1801; d. Berlin, 1851*

fire from Virgil, Shakespeare, Byron and the Goethe of 'Faust'—whom he frankly saw in the light of Latin neo-romanticism. To his inflamed imagination the classical symphony seemed too generalized and ambiguous in meaning; he set out to give it a literal sense by imposing a 'programme'. He represents a revival, in new and modern surroundings, of the old French national tendency to description in music, discovered long before him in lute and harpsichord suites as well as in opera. Thus, five years after Beethoven's ninth symphony he wrote his 'Symphonie fantastique', in which music mirrored a poet's love-story in a series of visions of an opium-eater, passionate or elegiac or grotesque; while his 'Harold en Italie' was an attempt to give a new programmatic meaning to the old symphonic concerto. The full orchestra was his principal medium; only very

occasionally did he handle smaller musical forces, preoccupied as he was with extreme and gigantic aims. And so with his vocal writing; huge choral masses were pressed into the service of his ideas. He forged anew the poetry of 'Faust' and 'Romeo and Juliet' to his own ends, and monstrous works came forth, half oratorio, half symphony, half lyrical and half dramatic, all blazing with colour. Similarly he took up liturgical texts, the Requiem and the Te Deum, for the purpose of a colossal musical exhibition and show of power. And throughout these works, as likewise in his three operas—the first the glorification of an artist ('Benvenuto Cellini'), then that child of tragic travail, 'Les Troyens', and last the merry 'Béatrice et Bénédict', after



*Friedrich von Flotow. b. Teutendorf, 1812; d. Darmstadt, 1883*

Shakespeare's 'Much Ado'—he was the master of instrumentation and orchestral colour, subordinating all other musical means to that effect and entirely guided by it in the workings of his imagination.

But however subtle and new Berlioz's blending of colours may have been, and however fruitful his 'programmatic' idea in suggesting individual harmonic, rhythmic and dynamic audacities, he failed in the main lines of his symphonic composition to solve the problem he had set himself. The development section in the first movement of the 'Symphonie fantastique' might have shown him the way. Here was the place where the themes and motifs to which a definite programmatic sense had been ascribed were to go through a series of actual experiences; and this is what Berlioz sets them doing here. But he believed all the same that his work, 'quite apart from the dramatic (programmatic) intention', might yet afford 'a musical interest', and he thereby gives a clue to the half-and-half effect of its form. The 'musical music' in the work is weakened by the programmatic purpose, while the development of the latter clashes with the strictly musical sonata-form to which he still clung. Instead of matching his 'programme' with music of a closely corresponding development, he chose to divide the story he was illustrating into separate scenes, approximating to the traditional form of the four-movement symphony. This is all the more strange since he had created—or at least applied with a new poetic significance—in the *idée fixe* of the 'Symphonie fantastique' the germ of a possible development of that sort. The

flute melody of the 'Symphonie fantastique' and the viola theme of 'Harold en Italie' guaranteed him the unity of his symphonic whole, even though he did not employ these melodies in the manner of 'leit-motive', not transforming them but only transferring them into a succession of different scenes. It was left to Franz Liszt to take that step in advance of Berlioz, and out of the Programme Symphony to create the Symphonic Poem. So far as originality goes, Liszt was much inferior to Berlioz, but he surpassed him in taste and intellectual power. Nothing is more suggestive than to compare the two in their treatment of the matter of 'Faust'. For Berlioz this was a treasure-trove of romantic characters and situations, in depicting which he quite overlooked Goethe. Liszt at least made the



*H. Marschner*

Heinrich Marschner. b. Zittau, 1795; d. Hanover, 1861



Hector Berlioz



Ergründet und Verlegt der K. K. Hof- und priv. Kunst- und Musikalien-Handlung  
des Joh. Nep. Haslinger in Wien.

Hector Berlioz. b. Cote St André, Isère, 1803; d. Paris, 1869

Hector Berlioz. 'Grande messe des morts', 1853

attempt to deal with it in the spirit of the poet, while reducing it to the simplest terms. His conception was a thoroughly musical one, the material taking the form of three characteristic studies—Faust, Gretchen, Mephistopheles—while actual dramatic happenings are only referred to poetically by the introduction of the 'Chorus mysticus' at the close of the symphony as an indication of the basic ideas of tragedy. Similarly in his 'Dante' symphony he had vision and ingenuity enough not to be engrossed by the mere descriptiveness suggested by the subject. Engaged on such an undertaking as a 'Romeo and Juliet',

Liszt would never have surrendered as Berlioz did; he would assuredly have striven to compass the whole drama into some such plastic movement as Beethoven had achieved in his 'Coriolan' overture.

Liszt's one-movement symphonic poem is more closely related to Beethoven's poetically inspired overtures than to Weber's 'programme overtures', the charm of which lies principally in their melodiousness and colour. Some may say that his form is all development without any exposition. All the more attention, then, must be paid to the appearance of his themes. Liszt took the principle of unity of motive very seriously



—far more thoroughly than Berlioz—and the art shown in his thematic transformations proves what an ingenious ‘absolute’ musician he was. That variety of expression of his, developing from the most economical invention, was to become a resource of prime importance for modern music. But it was the poetic programme that enabled Liszt to shape as a musician in this way, and the programme gives us the key to his developments. The form of these developments is as various as are his subjects; and whether it is Tasso, whose progress from despair to triumph is related in the development of a Venetian gondolier’s declamatory song, or the triumph of Christianity over the hordes of heathendom (suggested by Kaulbach’s fresco of ‘The Battle of the Huns’) which he symbolized by the hymn-tune ‘Crux fidelis’, or the admirable character-drawing in the much-neglected ‘Hamlet’—all his subjects not only lend themselves naturally to musical treatment but are also, in Goethe’s sense, rich in symbolic intention, far surpassing the literal bounds of the ‘programme’. Freedom of form, not formlessness, was his aim. The tragedy of the pioneer was that he seldom achieved that firm and finished texture of strong musical ideas which satisfies the musician. We get the impression from these symphonic poems of an orchestrated version of the supreme pianist’s improvisations. From the pianoforte they derive the daring of their conception, but unfortunately the improvisation often entails crudity in the principal idea and mere transpositions and repetitions in place of thorough-going development and a close-

woven fabric. Liszt’s free form involves a free interpretation. As characteristic as the Mannheimers’ dynamic gradations are Liszt’s fluctuations of tempo. Thus in his ‘Orpheus’ we actually find the direction, ‘Crescendo and diminuendo of rhythm’. A tempo ever ebbing and flowing is the normal thing with him; an abrupt change of speed is reserved for an exceptional expressive effect.

The same independent spirit is shown in Liszt’s vocal works, alike in his songs—in which he discarded the compact lied-form in favour of a rhapsodic though still, as a rule, not formless presentation, thereby originating the modern song—and in the most extended forms of accompanied vocal music, the oratorio and the mass. He is both the first and almost the last musician of the nineteenth century who counts in the history of Catholic church music. Nothing was so antipathetic to the spirit of the romantic age as the rationalistic church music of the rococo period and the ‘enlightened’ generation. The reaction went to the extreme of decrying all subjective, individual expression—though it was that of the greatest composers, Haydn, Mozart and Beethoven—and indeed any kind of instrumentally accompanied liturgical music. From this ‘Nazarenism’, which saw salvation only in a return to the pure a-cappella style of the sixteenth century and idolatrously worshipped the ghost of Palestrina, Liszt rescued the music of the church. He understood the spirit of the ancient liturgical art every bit as well as did such composers as Etti and Aiblinger, but his way was not to imitate it but to re-create it as a Catholic

FANTAISIE BRILLANTE SUR LISZT



LISZT ET LES  
 ENCHANTEMENTS. — Liszt  
 est un homme qui a  
 voulu à tout prix  
 tout ce qu'il y a de  
 mieux en musique.  
 Sans compter qu'il  
 a voulu être le plus  
 grand de son temps.  
 C'est un homme qui  
 a voulu être le plus  
 grand de son temps.  
 C'est un homme qui  
 a voulu être le plus  
 grand de son temps.

LISZT SA MUSE ET SA  
 MUSE. — L'homme  
 respectable, son foi, son  
 idéal et son talent de  
 jouer son concertos  
 d'un Hongrois. L'autre,  
 même fatal, terrible  
 exemple de postmoderni-  
 tés. Un maître de pa-  
 reilles mains, si ce n'est  
 sur un piano?

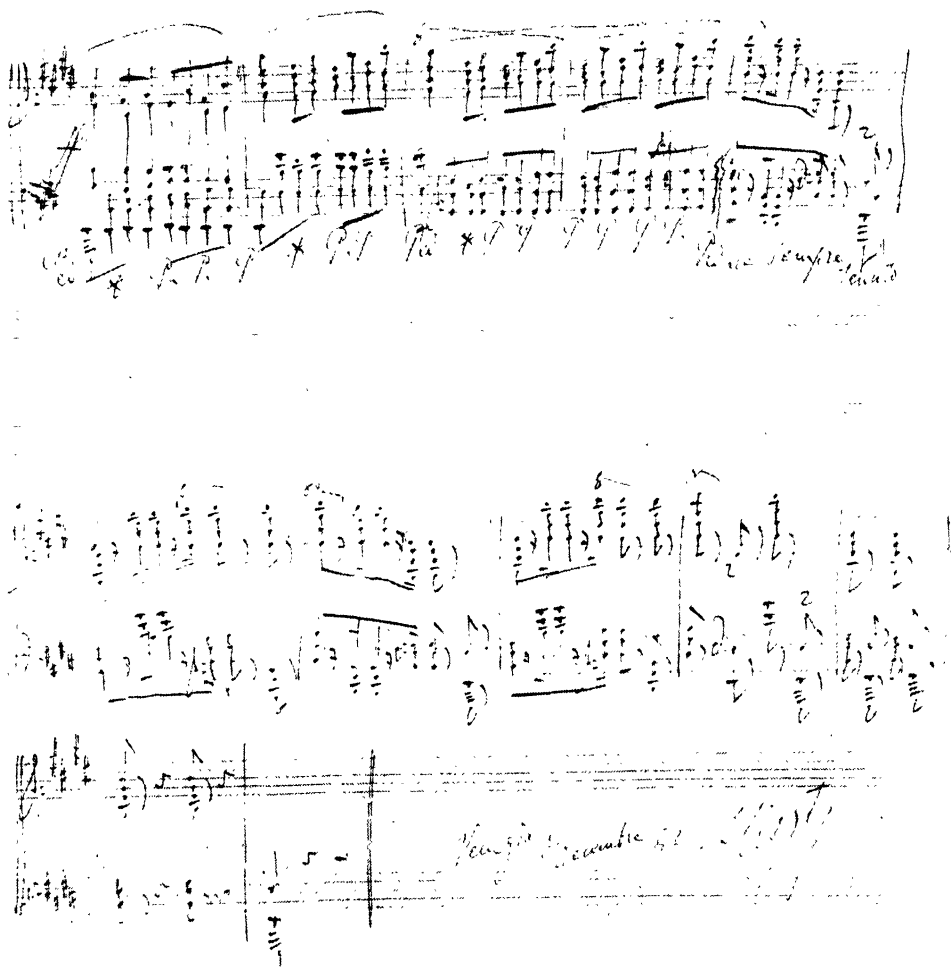
LISZT ET SON PIANO. — Y a renoncé aujourd'hui, après  
 avoir reconnu qu'il faisait plus de mal au piano avec ses  
 quatre mains, qu'avec de la race des Lœuclaclofons.  
 Il n'a plus à quatre octaves chacune, trente-deux octaves il.

LISZT A HOME. — Invoquant  
 de se faire reconner au piano, à  
 son pompe et à son œuvre, le  
 jupe — tout est qui comte —  
 la finit à faire faire aux en-  
 tées leur purgatoire sur la  
 terre. C'est étrange, mais son  
 chœur, surtout les lettres dans  
 l'Église avec toutes les jupes  
 de ses, les autres dans le monde  
 au bras de Miss Harvadi, et ces  
 visions sans motifs et sans fin.  
 Que nous acceptons comme que  
 s'écoula d'un laot.

LISZT ET SES OCCASIONS. — En-  
 chanta plus dans l'histoire nous  
 avons entendu les Triganes, dont  
 le succès est d'après lui un de  
 quelques Vain Lotes, les rap-  
 sodes du monde. Et puis, da-  
 puis le fameux voyage à Vienne,  
 ce me dit de la Harvadi, et  
 tout cela n'est qu'une blague?

LISZT ET LA MUSE DE SES. — D'ailleurs, l'histoire  
 des troupes, canons et fusilles, histoire que celle  
 même, composée par un sible, soit sans compter la  
 main religieuse que nous avons jamais entendus.

Franz Liszt. b. Raiding, 1811; d. Bayreuth, 1886



*Franz Liszt. Autograph of Fantasia on 'Simone Boccanegra', 1882*

believer and artist of his century. The fact was that for a modern man like Liszt the old, simple relationship with the divine world had been lost. It had to be striven for anew, and it inspired Liszt to ecstatic expression, except when he stuck fast in what has been called 'the historical and æsthetic amateur-Christianity of the nineteenth century'. Liszt's two festal masses, his organ mass and his requiem are to be understood

in this sense, while his psalms point to his two great confessions as believer and artist—'Die Legende von der heiligen Elisabeth' and his principal work, 'Christus'. The fallacy of 'Nazarene' composers of church music was exposed by Bruckner and Verdi as well as Liszt. Bruckner is, in his masses, the direct descendant of the old Austrian instrumental church-music composers, while Verdi was rooted in the traditions of

the seventeenth century. Neither found his modern musicianship to stand in the way of his performing irreproachable service to the liturgy, any more than it impaired his Christian faith.

The great virtuoso and the generous man that Liszt was also belongs to the history of music. When he was young, virtuosity, which since Weber's time had been on excellent terms with romanticism, was at its heyday. Paganini represented virtuosity pure and simple; Liszt, Chopin and Schumann, each in his own way, transcended it. Liszt did so both by the extent to which, especially in his pianoforte concertos and studies, he rose above the

ordinary level of Louis-Philippe drawing-rooms and concert halls, and by the high conception he had of the executive artist's mission as servant and prophet of the creative musician. It was characteristic of Liszt the man that he always subordinated his own artistic interests to those of others. Though never adequately realized as such, he was the father of the subtle harmonic conception of modern music, and he stood sponsor to almost everything that was great and new in the music of his time. His historical significance cannot be exaggerated. As for his artistic position, opinions will vary with the veering of the vogue between intellectualism and romanticism,



*Richard Wagner. b. Leipzig, 1813; d. Venice, 1883*



*Niccolò Paganini. b. Genoa, 1784; d. Nice, 1840*



Giacomo Meyerbeer. 'Les Huguenots', 1836

and according as stress is laid upon intention for obvious realization.

#### WAGNER

Just as Schubert is not conceivable as the supreme master of the lied without, on the one hand, the flood-tide of German lyricism and romantic poetry that culminated in Goethe and, on the other, the influence of Beethoven as an older contemporary, so there went to the making of Richard Wagner a mighty stream of cultural and artistic elements. Classical drama and the subject-matter of medieval poetry, so dear to the romanticists, and at the same time the heritage of third-period Beethoven,

romantic opera and the achievements of his contemporaries, Berlioz and Liszt—all this was grist to Wagner's mill, all this, with enormous energy and consistency, wonderfully assimilating and adapting, he pressed into the service of one purpose, the creation of romantic music-drama, the idea of a work of art all-embracing. For all Wagner's greatness as a musician, the misunderstandings his purpose was to encounter arose from the fact that he was considered and judged solely as a composer. But this poet and musician in one person was, in a yet greater degree even than Beethoven, a prophet. He made use of drama and music as means to an end, believing them to have been so ordained. The different arts which,



Richard Wagner. 'Tannhäuser', 1861

after their integration in Greek tragedy, had separated to pursue individual careers, found themselves once more re-united in his music-drama. Quite mistakenly he believed the literary, spoken drama equally with 'absolute' music to have been superseded by this new synthesis. Wagner felt himself an artist with a mission; drama was in his very bones; it had to become music-drama because music was for him the supremely 'redemptive' art, incomparably powerful and inspiring.

The dramatist in Wagner matured before the musician. As a boy he began with dramatic poems and then, wishing to provide music for them, felt the need of acquiring sound technical foundations. This

he did easily enough. A few instrumental works of his pupilage, the chief of them a symphony in C, shows his facility in handling the apparatus of music and his skill in obtaining effects. At the age of twenty he wrote his first 'romantic opera', 'Die Feen', rather in Marschner's style; then a 'grand comic opera', 'Das Liebesverbot', in which he 'took not the slightest pains to avoid French and Italian reminiscences'. In its tendencies this is a musical document of the 'Young Germany' movement, deliberately conscious beyond anything else we possess in the operatic literature of that age. Finally came a grand historical opera in five acts, 'Rienzi', in which Wagner employed all the operatic resources of the century from

Spontini to Meyerbeer, intensifying them to the uttermost. It is as though he had felt compelled to go through a schooling as a composer of romantic opera; he graduated well, proving himself an exceptional student. Already in 'Die Feen' an essential characteristic of the later Wagner is foretold in the 'redemption' of the *dénouement*; and in all three of these works of his youth the telling use of allusive motifs shows him already much occupied with the problem of unity in opera. 'Rienzi', with its extraordinary deployment of musical forces, no doubt testifies to the attractions of grand opera; yet, however operatically, a truly tragic conflict rends the hero's breast and is represented in the action with irresistible spirit.

Nevertheless, a turning-point had sooner or later to be reached, and it came with the first unimpeachably Wagnerian work, 'Der fliegende Holländer'. The 'Holländer' is still an opera of set numbers, it is not without certain remains left over from the operatic past. But what dramatic and musical inspiration there is in the Flying Dutchman's great scene, in the construction of the second act and in the antiphonal choruses of the third! What a musical unity, this great 'dramatic ballad' that springs from the germ of Senta's song! A whole world developed from the impulse Wagner had received from Emmy's ballad in Marschner's 'Vampyr'. The sea is the background of the work, and so powerfully is this realized that a prejudiced adversary of Wagner's had to acknowledge frankly that in every page of the score one felt the wind blowing in one's face. And in the immensely deepened and intensified

part played by the orchestra — most beautifully shown in the recognition scene between Senta and the Dutchman, and in Erik's story of his dream—there is already more than a hint that Wagner was on a fair way to arrive at a new synthesis of drama and music. His intellectual power and range were to enable him more and more fully to realize this rôle of the symphonic orchestra.

Wagner's two other works of this period — 'Tannhäuser', called simply an 'Action in three acts', and the 'romantic opera' 'Lohengrin'—represent further stages in the evolution of music-drama out of opera. Wagner at this time was still considering plans for historical operas, but the conceptions he actually worked out were only these two 'ballads'—the legend of Tannhäuser, which he most ingeniously linked



Richard Wagner. 'Rienzi', Dresden, c. 1870

up with the saga of the minstrels' contest on the Wartburg, and the saga of Lohengrin. It grew upon him that for music—the pure utterance of feeling—the proper material could only be the timeless, the purely human. The human element in the first two works of this period is the redemption of sinful man by self-sacrificing woman, devotedly true, renunciatory and divinely pure; in the third it is the tragic disillusionment of a lonely divinity in quest of love.

From 'Tannhäuser' onwards Wagner composed no longer by numbers but by scenes. Self-contained melody was more and more dissolved in a flowing, expressive *melos* (not that even the later Wagner avoided strict melody, when it was dramatically justified). Out of small units grows the great whole of scenes, acts, the work entire. While the drama of 'Tannhäuser', with the fluctuations of the deep erotic conflict in the hero's breast, surpasses the 'Holländer'—it may be said to be the work in which Wagner released himself from his own 'Liebesverbot'—'Lohengrin' in its musical expression represents the supreme fulfilment of romantic art. The hitherto unknown brilliance and richness of his orchestra, obtained by novel division and blending of the strings and wind instruments, his choruses (so often the weakness of a dramatic work), as also the scenes filled with purely decorative music—all these are signs of rapturous musical creativeness, announcing that Wagner the musician had caught up with the dramatist and now stood upon the same height.

The period of Wagner's exile began with six years in which the creative artist was

silent. This long fallow-time may be compared with the period in Schiller's life which the poet spent in æsthetic and historical studies, to emerge at length as Goethe's peer. During this time Wagner became acquainted with Schopenhauer's works, which presented to him in philosophical form the thoughts he had already in part expressed as an artist or was soon to express. He also learnt to know Liszt's symphonic compositions, and derived a far-reaching stimulus from their harmonic subtleties. This stimulus has been underrated by some, and indeed denied. On the other hand, it has sometimes been exaggerated. Wagner seized upon its elements with such a compelling power as to render his harmonic style after 'Lohengrin' in itself an original and independent creative achievement. His chromaticism has virtually nothing in common with the commonplace chromaticism of Spohr.

It was the period of his theoretical prose-works in the writing of which he envisaged clearly his ultimate goal and developed from the composer who had achieved the consummation of romantic opera into the creator of the 'complete art-work', which was to be represented by his masterpieces, 'Der Ring des Nibelungen', 'Tristan und Isolde', 'Die Meistersinger von Nürnberg' and 'Parsifal'. Far-reaching though they are and subtle the æsthetic observations they contain, these writings were really written *pro domo*, with all the violence and the contradictions naturally involved in the foundation and defence of an intensely personal artistic creation. But just as Wagner's creative power was ever greater than his æsthetic understanding, so is his work ever



greater than his theory. Now, as once before in the case of Mozart, though under vastly different conditions, there again came into being a musical drama in which a balance was struck between the several forces.

In the older opera the dramatic and lyrical constituents had been separated, the former being allotted the 'half-music' of recitative as its means of expression, while 'full music' was reserved for points of lyrical suspension in the action. Wagner distributed the elements so that musical expansion and dramatic movement proceeded side by side. The secret of this fusing lies in the relationship established by Wagner between the 'speech-song' of his dramatic personages and his symphonic orchestra—the greatest artistic achievement of our age', as he himself called it. This hundred-tongued polyphonic orchestra reveals the inner motives of the actors in the traffic on the stage above it; it utters their secret thoughts, and the things they know not are disclosed to us. The love that is to entangle Siegmund and Sieglinde is betrayed to us from the moment each sets eyes on the other; long before Sieglinde tells us we know who the stranger was who had buried the sword in the ash-tree's trunk; we have seen into the souls of Isolde and Tristan before ever the potion looses their tongues.

Wagner himself declared the art of transition to be the finest and most profound that he possessed. 'To be understood', he said, 'is of such essential importance . . .' This understanding is only to be attained through the most definite and compelling 'motivation' of the transitions, and the whole of my

artistic work consists of bringing out through this 'motivation' the necessary spontaneous emotional mood'. This art of transition reposes upon the fundamental application of the so-called 'leitmotiv', which was the old reminiscent motif intensified and strengthened. It guaranteed Wagner the unity of his drama and, indeed, of his whole tetralogy. On it depends the profundity of the effect produced by Wagnerian drama, as also the breadth of the design; for these motifs, of so wonderfully pregnant an invention and containing in themselves endless possibilities of development, undergo in the course of the drama an intense condensation, acquiring a powerful emotional content and a symbolic significance which enables Wagner to unite 'the utmost capacity for combination' with the utmost clarity of meaning. The attainment of this clarity required extreme care in introduction and exposition, and the very gradual charging of each motif with its expressive power. All the time the great dramatist never wrote symphonic music for its own sake but always maintained the closest relationship between the glorious orchestral organ of his creation and the drama, while achieving musical effects of the utmost profundity. It is enough to mention the prelude to the third act of 'Die Meistersinger', where in sixty bars the whole of the Hans Sachs drama is concentrated in an irresistible piece of musical psychology, supreme in its beauty and lucidity. Not 'the wealth of combinations', but the spirit of these compositions, their depth and their humanity make of them the great works that they are.

4.



Richard Wagner. Autograph of 'Die Meistersinger', 1867

The role played by the orchestra provided Wagner with the means of representing in idealized form the action of his dramas. 'To concentrate everything into three principal situations, intensely compact and powerful, in such a way that the matter in all its depth and complexity stands out clearly and comprehensively'—in these words he once defined a principle of his art. But in practice this was not quite how his dramatic poems were planned and executed. His characteristic narrations and recapitulations—Isolde's tale of the wounded Tristan, Wotan's great scene in the second act of 'Die Walküre', the scene of the riddles with Mime and that of the conjuration of Erda in 'Siegfried', and Gurnemanz's legendary discourse in 'Parsifal'—all serve the music in its task of revealing and deepening the inwardness of the action, and are essential to the whole.

The language of Wagner's verse, too, underwent modifications with this new relation between drama and music. Down to the time of 'Lohengrin' the poet was still wedded to a conventional literary diction which imposed at times a certain languishing movement upon the music, but now he found in a crisp and characteristic alliterative verse a flexible vehicle for the new melodious recitative. Not that he was bound by a theory on this point—or at any rate by no theory more rigid than that each artistic problem should receive its appropriate solution—and so in 'Tristan' we find a free alternation between alliterative and rhymed verse, humorous doggerel in 'Die Meistersinger', and then in 'Parsifal' a return to a more stately versification. And so also, without ever violating dramatic truth,

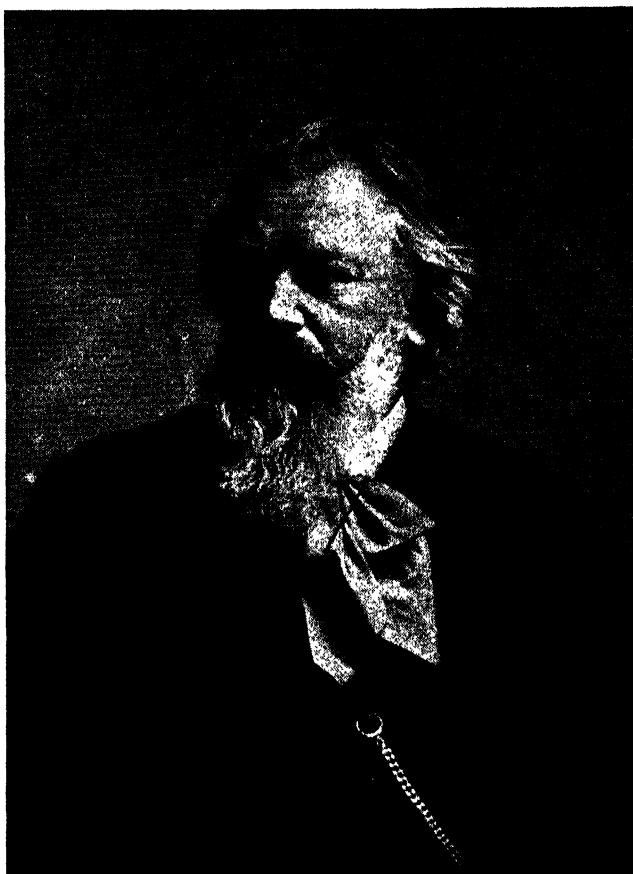
he planned each act to effect a musical intensification, and it is a source of endless wonder to consider how variously he achieves his culminations, how he allows for points of rest and how, by retarding and recharging, he builds up the gigantic crescendo of an act, of a drama, and of his dramatic cycle. Even in his later period it was still Wagner's fortune to be able, as with his earlier works, to transcend his own achievements and mount to even higher things. After the completion of 'Das Rheingold', 'Die Walküre' and the first two acts of 'Siegfried', a passionate experience in his life opened to him the gates of the wondrous world of 'Tristan', with all its poignant dissonance that heralds the birth of a new era of modern music. Then came 'Die Meistersinger' with its new-old polyphony, and an accession of creative power that enabled him gloriously to consummate his tetralogy, not ostensibly only but also in inward spirit, and then in 'Parsifal' to produce the most intense and sublime of his compositions.

It would be idle to attempt here to appraise these four individually. 'Der Ring des Nibelungen', the composition of which was spread over a period of twenty-five years, during which profound changes took place in Wagner's mind, inevitably turned out incommensurable, contradictory, 'involuntary', as Wagner himself called it. Only in the course of the shaping of the drama did it occur to him to convert the dramatic hero of the tetralogy, Siegfried, into the spokesman of the ideal hero, Wotan. Yet his feat in welding into a unified whole this cosmic drama of the

curse of might redeemed by love, as mirrored in the profound Germanic myth, remains one of the greatest achievements of the human intellect. The peculiar position of 'Tristan' is due to the perfect harmony of its three elements, the dramatic, the symphonic and the metaphysico-symbolic. 'Die Meistersinger', ostensibly a satirical parody of the Wartburg minstrels' contest, is really the counterpart of 'Tristan'. The tragic love so wonderfully represented in the one is contrasted in the other with the triumph of humour. With the lovers' comedy in 'Die Meistersinger' is admirably entwined a poet's drama, a thing incomparable of its kind, in which Wagner depicts his own place in tradition, the eternal conflict between new inspiration and the conservatism of the schools,

and the inevitable filiation between new and old, the music meanwhile exemplifying the creative transformation of old into new.

The enormous concentration that gives the third act of 'Tristan' its sublimity should in 'Parsifal' have been raised to a still higher degree. Such was Wagner's intention which, however, in art and melody was rather less than fulfilled. The ageing master's invention failed a little to keep up with the accumulated symbolism. None the less, this last work too possesses a full measure of that magic which, more than its philosophy,



*Johannes Brahms. b. Hamburg, 1833; d. Vienna, 1897*

constitutes the supreme quality of Wagner's art—the magic of the fact that as a whole it never fails to yield something beyond and above the sum of its action and music and of its external and internal drama. Fundamentally it was Wagner the musician who achieved this, and it was the musician in Wagner who conquered the world.

From some of his contemporaries Wagner received unlimited devotion, from the rest incomprehension and hatred—a hatred to which, with the reckless pugnaciousness of his nature, he was always ready to add fuel



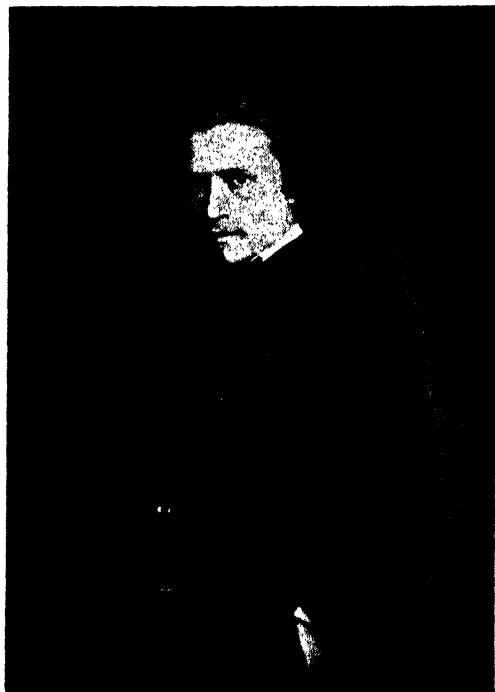
Johannes Brahms. 'Vier Lieder', op. 96, Berlin, 1886

by word and deed. He early felt the need of segregating his work from the everyday world and its idle pleasures and of providing it with an asylum such as it eventually found in the Bayreuth Festival Theatre. This he did himself, not leaving it to the piety of posterity, and in so doing achieved the greatest personal victory that any artist has ever won.

#### BRAHMS, BRUCKNER AND FRANCK

Wagner the dramatist embodied one aspect of German music of the nineteenth century; Johannes Brahms, the 'absolute' musician who, despite occasional operatic schemes, was really at the opposite pole from opera, represented another, without which it would have been incomplete. Brahms was as great a contrast to Wagner as he was to

Liszt. Wagner often felt that he would have to make a choice between producing his existing works or composing new ones. Either activity seemed to him at times 'sufficient in itself to consume the highest degree of vital energy'. That he finally achieved both was the triumph of his unique vitality, and he was driven to it less by outward compulsion, as he himself imagined, than by an inner necessity of his nature. Brahms was not masterful, either as a man or as an artist; but it was the same reserved beauty in his works and in his human relations which attracted people to him, while Wagner, who took his public and his friends by storm and demanded their entire submission, often alienated the most distinguished because they were too



Hugo Wolf. b. Windischgratz, 1860; d. Vienna, 1903



Johannes Brahms. Autograph of 'Rhapsody for Pianoforte in E Flat', op. 119, no. 2

individual to be able to submerge themselves in him. One such was Peter Cornelius, the sensitive poet and composer of lieder and choral works, whose 'Barbier von Bagdad', despite a slight influence of Berlioz, is a really original masterpiece, an exquisite blend of lyricism and delicate humour.

But in his constant striving after technical perfection in the classical sense, Brahms stands in even stronger opposition to Liszt. His ideals lay in the past, not in the future, and he went further back into the past than any of the masters who had preceded him. He began as a romantic, and it was as such

that Schumann first enthusiastically hailed him; but he very soon felt the need of basing his compositions on a profound study of the old masters. Through Beethoven, Mozart and Haydn he reached back to Handel and Bach, to Heinrich Schütz, and to the masters of the a-cappella style of the sixteenth and even fifteenth century. It was as if this late-born Low German felt homesick for the old South German naïveté and serenity; for the paradise of melodic purity out of which sprang his waltzes, his Hungarian dances and gypsy songs, and his folksong arrangements. His chamber music and songs are saturated with it, and this it

was that made Schubert so much the object of his adoration. He based his songs once more on strophic form, as a simple relation between vocal melody and accompaniment, in contrast to the Austrian Hugo Wolf, who transferred the centre of gravity in his songs to the symphonic development of motifs in the accompaniment, although he was too good and, in a restricted sense, too versatile an artist altogether to neglect the stanza. An enthusiastic disciple of Wagner, he placed his art at the service of his poet and in almost every case led up to the climax of his songs by a resolution of one of Wagner's beloved six-four chords. Brahms, on the other hand, drew the inspiration for his choral works, the most important of which is the 'German Requiem', from the sixteenth century. In them he employed an extraordinary wealth of early musical expressive idiom, shaping it successively to his own purpose. The Bible being his highest source of verbal inspiration, he aimed at giving a monumental character to folk-art, and in his last work, the 'Vier ernsten Gesänge', he fully realized his aim.

In his instrumental works, too, he began by an analysis of the past, and his sense of responsibility with regard to form shows itself in his abandoning after a few experiments the grand orchestral form and devoting himself exclusively to chamber music. It was not till the last twenty years of his life that he again approached the larger medium, in his overtures, concertos and symphonies. He tried to recapture variation and sonata form for modern art, to realize in his own practice the old ideal of musical construction, to banish everything

irrelevant, to fetter but not to banish the imagination, to achieve the utmost concentration of expression and to develop the thematic material organically and with the greatest possible rhythmic unity. Towards the end of his life Brahms set himself a new task. Technically he had long since reached the same level as his models; for instance, he attains a Mozartian transparency in the andante of his string quartet in B $\flat$ . In his last masterpieces—in the fourth movement of the E minor symphony, in the clarinet quintet and the clarinet sonatas—he found at last a perfect medium for the expression of his own humanity. But the pessimistic content of these works is no mere personal confession. The master, to whose symphonic ideals Beethoven always remained a stumbling-block, recognized that the age of innocence of the great composers was lost to us for ever. ('How lucky those old giants were; they could let themselves go!') He recognized that neither he nor any of his contemporaries, not even Wagner, were of the streams 'down which the nations travel, looking into their depths and at the heavenly sunlight they reflect'.

But while the romantic-antiromantic movement which had begun with Mendelssohn and Schumann was again drawing to a close in the work of the classic of the classicists, Brahms, who had infused new life into forms which the Romantics had weakened and reduced to mere formalism, there arose in the domain of the symphony another Romantic of the first order, Anton Bruckner. A Romantic, in so far as he made pure sound the basis of his symphonies, and thereby produced his most



Anton Bruckner. b. Ansfelden, 1824; d. Vienna, 1896

harmonious work in his fourth symphony, which depends almost entirely on beauty of sound; a symphonist also, whose nine symphonies, in contradistinction to those of Brahms (which are really rooted in chamber music), once more attained the monumental stature of true symphony. Of the four sources of his musical expression—Bach, Beethoven, Schubert, Wagner—the Schubertian certainly flows most abundantly in his symphonies. He had the same spring of primal melodic invention, the same breadth of form which, whether in the simple line of his slow movements and scherzos or the somewhat incoherent first and last movements, cannot be traced back to any obvious influence. What chiefly distinguishes him from Brahms is the courage with which he again adopts the great Beethovenian Adagio form, and his lack of a homogeneous rhythmic sequence in his opening and final move-

ments, which he replaces by a masterly melodic treatment and magnificent instrumentation, nourished by long study of the organ. His symphonies breathe once more a cosmic spirit. Love of Nature, piety, humour and mysticism seek in dance-forms and solemn chorales the elements of their expression. This simple, rustic, 'uneducated' musician was not a great thinker but a great and sensitive human being, whose battles had been fought within himself, who had known both doubt and joy, despair and exultation, and who had the divine capacity to express what he had suffered in compositions rich in invention and primitive creative power.

César Franck—Belgian by birth and Parisian by adoption—could with some justification be called the Latin Brahms or Bruckner (in the same way that Brahms or Bruckner could be described as the German or Austrian Franck). As an operatic composer he was completely unsuccessful and even in his oratorios he is no more than a link between the descriptive genius of Berlioz and the ecstatic fervour of Liszt. But he is a master in his own right of chamber music and—although he wrote only a single example—of the symphony, in which he achieved a perfect fusion of the most delicate and refined harmonic with a true spirit of polyphony. And he is a truly great master of the piano and more especially of the organ, on which he combines the polyphonic genius of Bach with his own intensely spiritual Catholicism. Apart from Berlioz he is the finest example of the French Romantic or post-Romantic, far superior in importance and influence to his more





*Fryderyk Chopin. Autograph of Polonaise in A major, op. 40, no. 1, 1838*

popular Parisian contemporaries such as Gounod, Massenet, or even Thomas. Only Saint-Saens with his delicate sense of taste and wealth of invention can hold a candle to him. From Franck and Saint-Saens springs the rich development through which French music has passed since the third quarter of the nineteenth century.

#### NATIONAL MUSIC

The attraction felt by the romantic composers of the nineteenth century for simple humanity, the movement back to the land, the impulse to get below surface politeness to the roots of things, led to the development of a side of the art ignored in the

classical period, namely, national music. And this brought into the swim those secondary musical peoples who had had no part to play alongside the representatives—Italian, French and German—of the universal music of the eighteenth century. Universal music had long before flirted with its rival-to-be, borrowing melodic and rhythmic suggestions; thus, Haydn from Croatian and Hungarian folk-music, and Beethoven from Russia in his op. 59. The early romanticists went further, Weber seizing upon the melodies from Spanish and Chinese sources, while Slav and Hungarian elements were fused in Schubert's rhythms, melodies and harmonies. Song and dance



*Edvard Grieg. b. Bergen, 1843; d. Bergen, 1907*

were quarries for the constructors of national music, the method being for a fragment of this raw material to be selected and for the modern artist to exploit some characteristic feature or another—archaic melody or harmony, monotonous rhythm or primitive-sounding timbre—for his purpose.

On these lines the greatest master of national music, Fryderyk Chopin, was eminently a modern type of musician. It is significant enough that he migrated to Paris, the hub of civilization. He came before the world as a composer for the pianoforte, and his nocturnes, ballades, studies, scherzos, preludes, rondos, variations, sona-

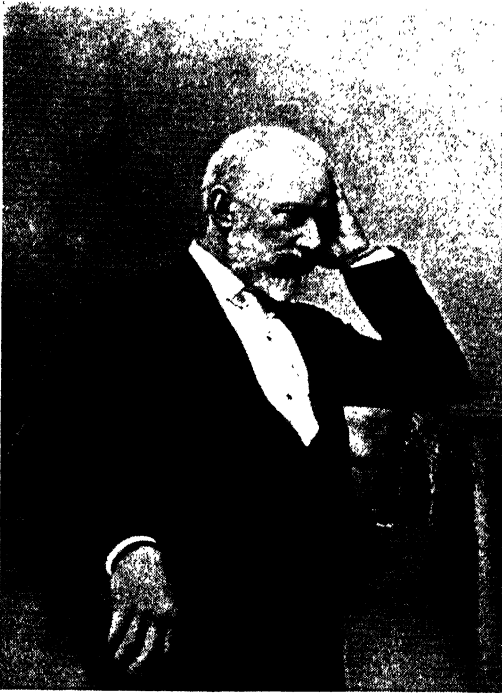
tas and concertos are, as it were, the expression at once of the soul of the instrument and of his own. Every charm of which the instrument was capable he conjured from it; it was never asked for what it had not in its nature to give. Unlike all the great masters of the pianoforte before him and of his time, not even excepting Liszt, he had no unpianistic ideas. This is the clue to his stylistic perfection and also possibly to his intellectual limitations. His age was that of amazing virtuosos, but his own virtuosity was devoted to the service of the most delicate and sensitive taste and poetic feeling. In his melody he rescued the charm and sweetness of the best side of Rossini's

A SHORT HISTORY OF MUSIC

*Lento*      *Rakastava*      Jan Sibelius.

Jan Sibelius. Autograph of 'Rakastava,' 1911

Sir Edward Elgar. Autograph of 'Introduction and Allegro', op. 47, 1905

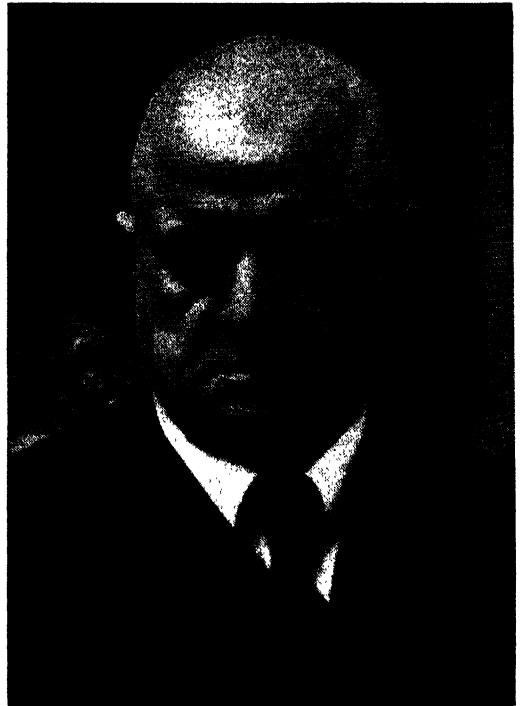


*P. I. Tchaikovsky. b. Kamsko-Votinsk, 1840;  
d. St Petersburg, 1893*

melodic style. Over the light-footed rhythms of waltz, polonaise and mazurka it delighted him to draw tuneful designs of the utmost grace and tenderness and to adventure with them into extreme keys, the darkest and the brightest, through the richest and boldest modulations, while the old alternation of tonic and dominant took on a thousand new charms at his hands. His rhythmic feeling was of amazing sensitiveness, his wealth of figuration and arabesque inexhaustible, and his delicate sense of sound created veritable poems within the tiniest of frames. None of his followers was to succeed in imbuing the elementary material of folk-music with any-like his intensely personal feeling—that peculiarly Chopinesque blend of melan-

choly and dæmonic passion which can range in one direction to a pathological hypnosis under the spell of sound and in the other to hyperæsthesia.

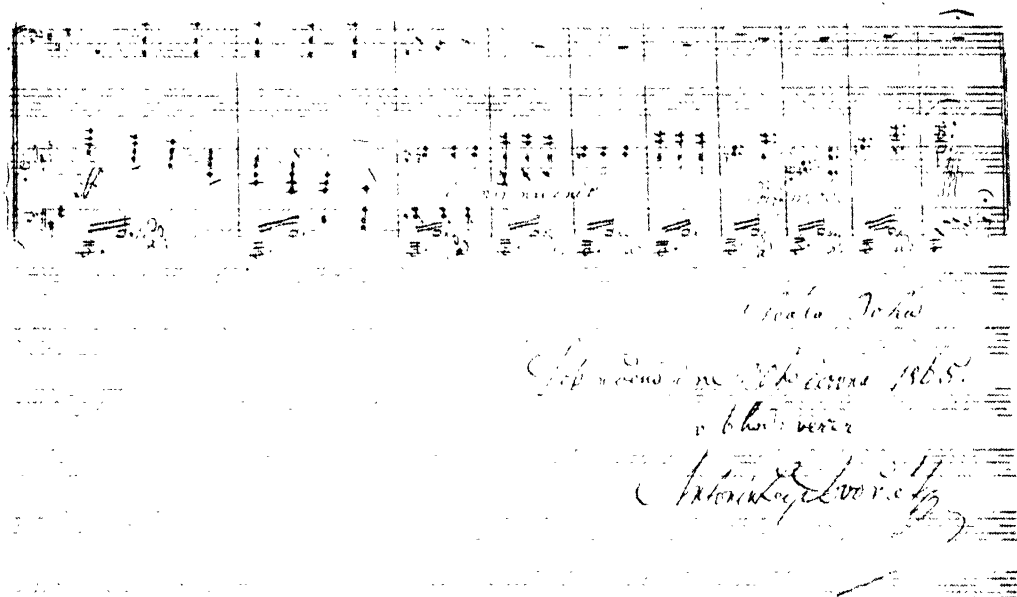
After Chopin the whole field of music was invaded by nationalism—song, opera, chamber music and the symphony—the lead of Poland being followed by the self-assertion, successive or simultaneous, of the various northern peoples. Denmark was represented by Gade who, adopting Mendelssohn's romantic classicism, tinged it with a faintly Nordic suggestion, and later by Carl Nielsen; and Norway by the sensitive Grieg, with his harmonic mannerisms. The Russian school began with Glinka and included Tchaikovsky—though he, indeed, came to terms with the poor melodic style



*Jan Sibelius. b. Tavastehus, 1865*



*Fryderyk Chopin. b. Zelazowa Wola, 1810; d. Paris, 1849*



*Antonín Dvořák. Autograph of Violoncello Concerto in A, 1865*

of German sentimental romanticism—and Finland found a voice in Sibelius, England in Elgar's noble and sensitive art. None struck so happy a balance between national and universal elements as the Czechs—the lovable Smetana who with his temperate use of national idioms recalls Schubert, and Antonín Dvořák, the most inventive and spontaneously musical of all national composers; and then Leoš Janček, the representative of Moravia—in contrast to the many lesser men who emphasized oddity instead of assimilating it, not to speak of more recent musicians who have cultivated exoticism and startling effects for their own sake.

## YESTERDAY AND TO-DAY

**A**FTER the great victory of Romanticism there began that age of transition to which we ourselves belong—the period of what is called ‘modern’ music. This age of ours has two conspicuous features; it presents simultaneously the widest and most incompatible contrasts, and it is also hampered by too great an inheritance from the past. There never was an age when art was more isolated, more completely divorced from life, and yet never had music a wider sphere of influence, or apparently greater practical possibilities of reaching the innermost hearts of the people. And never was there so wide a gulf as between the art of our real artists and that abominable substitute for popular music which is eagerly gulped down by the masses in the musical-comedy theatres or absorbed by the aid of the wireless and the gramophone.

The burden of our inheritance is felt most severely in the post-Wagnerian type of opera. Not to speak of the mere imitators of Wagner’s subjects or musical style, his followers have achieved no more than a compromise between his principles and those of an older day. Some have gone back to set forms, some have laid more stress upon post-romantic sound-effects and scenery; others have made the orchestra supreme, and thus allowed the ancillary art of music to dethrone the drama, choosing

subjects that afford opportunities in the theatre for modern orchestral polyphony, with all its wealth of new effects. The German composer who has shown himself the most loyal to Wagner’s principles and at the same time the most independent and original is Hans Pfitzner, especially in his first opera, a legendary tale that is indeed saturated with music. Richard Strauss is the most successful representative of the ‘orchestral’ opera. He has experimented with every type of operatic method of the past and has incidentally succeeded in combining a swift and naturalistic declamation with elaborate symphonic treatment. More recently Igor Stravinsky has set himself to establish opera on a new basis, free from all earlier tradition. His ‘Oedipus Rex’, to a Latin text, is more like a conventionalized oratorio. Other composers have treated opera as a mystery-play, as a cabaret entertainment, or even as an opportunity for political agitation, in order to bring what was formerly a socially exclusive function into the atmosphere of the street.

Nor is opera the only branch of music in which musicians have failed to possess themselves completely of the great inheritance. Even the most eminent can cope with only a fragment of it. Richard Strauss in his symphonic poems picked up the threads left by Liszt and Berlioz. He takes

his 'programme' seriously, and can dress up an arbitrary plot with what is undoubtedly music; his clever handling of combined motives makes him secure of continuity and climax, but his knowledge and skill lead him too often into mere virtuosity. Max Reger on the other hand was a great miniaturist; but he could not control the luxuriance of his harmony, and thus became formless (in the strictest sense of the word) and shapeless in rhythm. Almost every composer of our time has been compelled unconsciously to become a specialist in some particular device. Modern technique, with its complex wealth of harmonic and rhythmical devices, of contrapuntal and orchestral effects, allows the composer to make his choice and to simulate a reasonable degree of intoxication. There is apparently



*Richard Strauss. b. Munich, 1864; d. Garmisch-Partenkirchen, 1949*



*Sir Edward Elgar. b. Broadheath, nr. Worcester, 1857; d. Worcester, 1934*

an endless range of expression possible between the most primitive and the most sophisticated, so that a man like Gustav Mahler could crowd together elements that he knew to be irreconcilable and produce artificially the mysterious effect of creative profundity. Mahler knew well the impression made by immeasurable genius, and with this knowledge he attempted a forced synthesis of its causes; at the same time it would be unjust to accuse this composer of being a mere effect-maker, for he was indeed an artist who strove intensely and single-heartedly to find a means of expression that should be valid and intelligible for every type of audience.

Late-romanticism developed into impressionism, which sought to induce emotion by artificial means, by the multiplication



of minute stimuli and by the employment of effects that are really foreign to music. The leaders and perfectors of this style were the French, whose chief master, both in taste and in skill, was Claude Debussy, as we can see in his pianoforte pieces, in his symphonic pictures and in his opera 'Pelléas et Mélisande', which obtains its atmosphere with the most delicate and subtle means. Debussy indeed discovered entirely new expressive values for the art of music. His way of treating chords like the mixtures of an organ responded to the most delicate nuances of mood. His subtle and imaginative combinations of timbres have immensely enriched the palette of both the pianoforte and the orchestra, and even his utter renunciation of emotional rhetoric



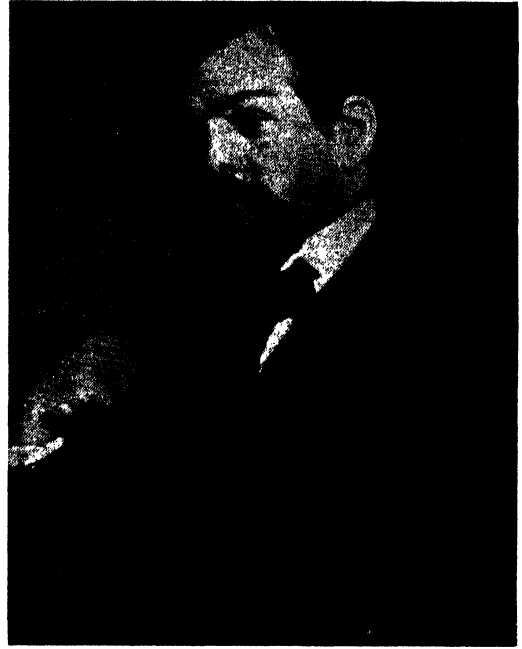
*Antonín Dvořák. b. Nelahozeves, 1841; d. Prague, 1904*



*Bedřich Smetana. b. Leitomischl, 1824; d. Prague, 1884*

induced in him positive original creation. Debussy's impressionism was a conscious reaction against 'Wagnerism'—a national reaction against the hegemony of German music. It was followed by analogous nationalist movements in all those countries which had formerly submitted to foreign domination, even in England, so long obedient to Germany and later to France, as well as in Spain, which had been Italianized. The smallest national units and the largest cosmopolitan communities, such as the United States, have attempted to develop a serious music of their own out of a corpus of autochthonous melody that is often curiously compiled.

Counter to this tendency runs one that may be called 'international'—the violent spirit of the younger and so-called 'contemporary' music of to-day. It is an ironical fact that the father of this movement was the Russian composer of songs and operas Modest Petrovitch Moussorgsky (1839-81). Moussorgsky's ideal was to write music that should be purely Russian, different altogether from the international music of the West; but his nationalism was combined with a hatred of everything that was conventional in method, expression or feeling. He aimed ruthlessly at truth and nothing else; he was thus the first musical expressionist. His more æsthetic followers, such as Alexander Scriabin, Ferruccio Busoni and many others, tried experiments with the actual musical material of so-called 'absolute'



*Claude Debussy. b. St Germain-en-Laye, 1862; d. Paris, 1918*



*Alexander Scriabin. b. Moscow, 1872; d. Moscow, 1915*

music, aiming at new types of harmony and melody, introducing the whole-tone scale and distorting the traditional chords of accompaniment by using parallel fourths, fifths and ninths, and so on. This attempt to give new meaning and expression to melody harmony and part-writing was afterwards systematically developed into the extremes of free tonality, polytonality, atonality, the twelve-note scale and even into changes in the basic foundations of music with the employment of quarter-tones and sixths of tone.

Behind all these devices and tendencies lies the desire to do away with all the poetical interpretation of music—or the possibility of it—which was characteristic of the whole nineteenth century. Music is to be music and nothing else. This desire



*Modest Mussorgsky. b. Karevo, 1839; d. St Petersburg, 1881*

culminates in the idealization of a mechanical type of music which is indeed the absolute antithesis of romantic sentimentality and feeling. The 'moderns' regard sentiment as the essential enemy, and the reaction attacks it in various ways. They hate the magniloquence of romanticism, the enormous piling-up of instrumental resources, the intoxicating sonority and above all the voluptuous effect of romantic music. Even in Mahler and Strauss, the last two and the most sharply contrasted exponents of late-romanticism, we may note the change towards a more intimate style of presentation. The chamber orchestra makes its appearance: not a reduced symphony orchestra, but a new organism, to express



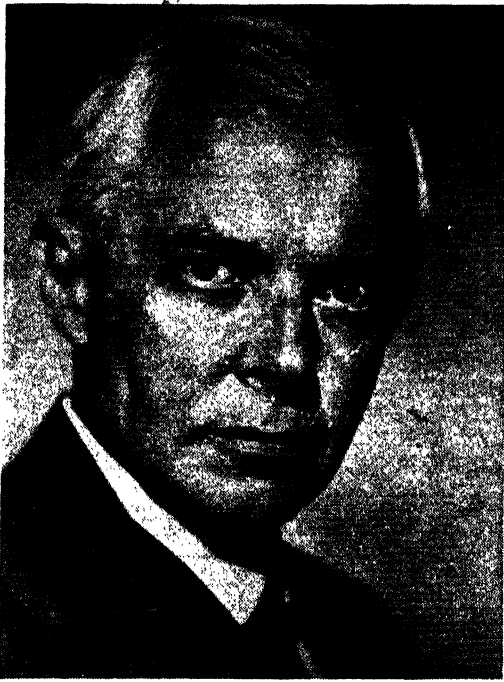
*Maurice Ravel. b. Ciboure, 1875; d. Paris, 1937*



*Igor Stravinsky. b. Oranienbaum, nr. St Petersburg, 1882*

a new expressive intention. It serves the needs of an entirely new style and technique of composition, no longer harmonic but polyphonic in a modern way, avoiding homophony and employing a great diversity of rhythms. Mahler, more clearly than any other, stands on the frontier between the old and the new worlds; he displays in tragic intensity the dualism of his time, the exaggerated sentimentality of the romantics and its first repudiation.

Repudiation takes many forms. The most obvious is parody of sentimentality and deliberate triviality, which may range from cheap jokes to the perversion of classical types of melody—though not carried back to the older classics—and of traditional methods of orchestration. 'Contemporary' music despises not merely sentimentality but every serious expression of feeling, and its deliberate triviality insults



*Béla Bartók. b. Nagyszentmiklós, 1881;  
d. New York, 1945*

the romantic adoration of beauty, regarding it simply as hypocrisy. It is no mere chance that Arnold Schönberg, who was once the most deeply entangled in this romantic adoration (cf. his 'Verklärte Nacht' and 'Gurrelieder'), initiated the renunciation of the past with trivialities, sublimated indeed, but still trivialities. The romantic wallowing in sentiment is answered most energetically by sheer vulgarity, which is seen most clearly in erotic and barbaric dance-music. Even before the First World War—which was itself symbolical of the spiritual disintegration of the world—the tango had come into European music, and in Paul Hindemith's first string quartet the boston plays its part. Fox-trot, shimmy and rag-time are adopted as elements of artistic

music, and finally jazz, an orgiastic dance-music in quick-march rhythm—the most abominable treason against all the music of Western civilization—becomes symbolic of the spirit of the times. Yet even in jazz there lurks a European and decadent desire—that desire for the natural, primitive and barbaric, a desire that often lifts its head in 'contemporary' music. It led Busoni towards non-European music—to throw a sort of veil and mask over its own humanity—and in others it has produced an unchaining of rhythm, joy in mere noise and the murder of musical ornament, though it has never achieved a genuine unity of physical and mental conditions, the dionysiac excitement of the genuine primitive man.



*Gustav Mahler. b. Kališt, Bohemia, 1860;  
d. Vienna, 1911*



*Ferruccio Busoni. b. Empoli, 1866; d. Berlin, 1924*

Barbarism, triviality, and mechanism are all conjoined in the work of Igor Stravinsky. His refinement of barbarity shows him to be more a Frenchman than a Russian. Like Paul Hindemith in Germany and many others, he has later sought contact with the pure voice of Bach or with the playful prattle of Pergolesi. The Hungarian Béla Bartók is perhaps the only man who has achieved a synthesis of the primitive and the artistic languages of music. 'Contemporary' composers are further drawn towards a type of expression that is yet more remote, remote too from all feeling or illustration, a sort of medieval gothicism. Through pure abstraction they feel an affinity to the Middle Ages and hope thus to attain the

true spirituality of music. This is the specifically German formula of modern music, observable as a matter of principle in the later Schönberg, whose music has become so abstract, so individual and so divorced from all relation to humanity as to be almost entirely unintelligible. On this new basis, as on that of mechanical music, Hanslick's idea of form moving in sound is to be realized.

All this repudiation, all this biliousness after the debauch of romanticism, along with the unending flood of merely imitative music and the mild asceticism of the musical 'youth movement', is no more than a state of transition, perhaps a necessary one.



*Paul Hindemith. b. Hanau, 1895*

Whither it may lead we cannot tell. We can only see that we are at the end of another chapter and that music has come to the end of her first, most youthful and loveliest phase of development. It is equally clear that she can never find salvation in a return to the past, in a hopeless attempt to redis-

cover her age of innocence. We must now seek the way to a new simplicity and truth; we must turn from irony to humour, from caricature to portraiture, from negation to affirmation. If there be still a future in store for music, it must be built upon a new humanization of its resources and its spirit.

# INDEX





# INDEX

- Abaco, 89, 94, 113  
 Abel, 132  
 Adam de la Hale, 29  
 Adam de St Victor, 15  
 Agricola, 41-2  
 Aiblingcr, 180  
 Albert, 82  
 Aldhelm, 19  
 Alfonso 'el Sabio', 26  
 Allemande, 89, 94  
 Ambrose, St, 12  
 Antiphon, 12  
 Antonius Romanus, 35-6  
 Arabian music, 5  
 Archimedes, 114  
 Aria, 73, 74, 104, 105, 113-14, 134, 136-40,  
 168-9, 188. *See also* Song  
 Ariosto, 73  
 Aristoxenus, 9  
 Ars nova, 29 *seq.*  
 Atonality, 205  
 Auber, 170  
 Augustine, St, 14  
 Aulos, 7-9  
  
 Bach, C. P. E., 123, 125  
 Bach, J. C., 132, 142  
 Bach, J. S., 44, 51, 64, 70-2, 75, 92-4, 98-9,  
 104-10, 113, 117, 150, 156, 160, 193, 195,  
 209  
 Ballad, 31, 73, 124-5, 156-8  
 Ballet de cour, 80  
 Balletto, 48, 62  
 Banchieri, 62  
 Bartók, 209  
 Bass viol, *see* Viola da Gamba  
 Bassani, 89  
 Basso continuo, 68-72, 85-6, 90, 93, 117  
 Basso ostinato, 70. *See also* Ostinato  
 Basso seguente, 69  
 Bateson, 60  
 Bayreuth, 192  
 Beethoven, 51, 109, 112, 123, 124, 130, 144-  
 153, 155, 160-2, 164-6, 175, 179, 184,  
 193-6  
 'Beggars' Opera, The', 140  
 Beheim, 28  
  
 Bellini, 169  
 Berlioz, 150, 162, 175-9, 184, 193, 202  
 Berno von Reichenau, 15  
 Bertran de Born, 26  
 Binchois, 36-8  
 Birds, Song of, 1  
 Bizet, 173  
 Boccaccio, 31, 32, 73  
 Boethius, 9, 17  
 Boieldieu, 170  
 Boston, 208  
 Bourrée, 89  
 Brahms, 51, 123, 150, 192-5  
 Bruck, 58  
 Bruckner, 150, 182, 194-5  
 Brumel, 41  
 Bürger, 124, 158  
 Burgundy, 37-8, 42  
 Busoni, 205  
 Buxtehude, 102, 104-5, 150  
 Byrd, 59-60  
 Byron, 176  
 Byzantine music, 11, 13, 14  
  
 Cabezon, 51  
 Caccia, 32, 51  
 Caccini, 69, 73  
 Calvinism, 63  
 Calzabigi, 114  
 Cambert, 80  
 Canon, 35, 38, 88, 128  
 Cantata:  
     Church, 64, 75, 82, 100, 104-6  
     Secular, 72-6, 88, 110, 125, 158  
 Canzon francese, 49-51, 55, 84-5, 86-7, 94  
 Canzone, 88, 90  
 Canzonetta, 49, 59-60, 62, 67, 110  
 Capriccio, 85, 88, 102  
 Carissimi, 74, 110  
 Carnival song, 66  
 Cassation, 123  
 Cassiodorus, 9  
 Castrato, 114  
 Cavalieri, 69  
 Cavalli, 78-80  
 Celtic music, 19-20  
 Cesti, 73, 78

INDEX

- Chaconne, 87, 97, 108  
 Chamber music, 72, 81, 86-9, 92-8, 120, 132, 142-4, 158, 162-4, 194-5, 197, 207. *See also* Sonata, String Quartet, Suite  
 Chamber sonata, *see* Sonata.  
 Chanson, 38-42, 49-52, 54, 63-4, 124  
 Chanson de geste, 25  
 Charles VII, 38  
 Cherubini, 148, 167, 168  
 Chinese music, 4, 196  
 Chopin, 162, 183, 197-9  
 Choral singing, 2, 8, 11, 13, 20, 150-2. *See also* Chorale, Church music, Hymn, Oratorio  
 Chorale, 62-4, 98-9, 102-4, 105-6, 195  
 Chromaticism, 44, 150, 187  
 Church music, 69, 81, 84, 90, 98-104, 109-112, 160, 180. *See also* Cantata, Chorale, Hymn, Magnificat, Mass, Motet, Oratorio, Requiem, Te Deum  
 Church sonata, *see* Sonata  
 Claudius, 124  
 Clavichord, 123  
 Clementi, 146  
 Collegia musica, 90  
 Coloratura, *see* Ornamentation  
 Compère, 41  
 Concerto, 56, 108, 123;  
     Concerto grosso, 84-5, 86, 95-8;  
     Solo concerto, 98, 142, 146, 176, 194, 197;  
     Vocal concerto, 86  
 Conductus, 33  
 Contemporary music, 204-10  
 Continuo, *see* Basso continuo  
 Corelli, 89, 93-4, 96-7, 113  
 Cornelius, 193  
 Cornett, 84  
 Counterpoint, 102, 127, 160, 203. *See also* Polyphony  
 Couperin, 106  
 Courante, 89  
 Croce, 52  
 Crwth, 19-20  
  
 Da Ponte, 138  
 Damasus, Pope, 14  
 Dance, 54, 82, 85, 87, 89-94, 153, 193, 195-9, 208  
  
 Dante, 30-1, 73  
 Davenant, 81  
 De la Rue, 41  
 Debussy, 204  
 Delphi, 7  
 Després, 37, 39-41  
 Diaphony, 20  
 'Dies iræ', 15  
 Discant, 20-1  
 Dithyramb, 7  
 Donato, 52  
 Donizetti, 172  
 Drama:  
     Greek, 7-8, 76, 110, 185  
     Liturgical, 25  
     Romantic, 174  
     *See also* Opera  
 Dufay, 36-8, 48  
 Duni, 140  
 Dunstable, 36-7  
 Dürer, 100  
 Dvořák, 201  
 Dynamics, 48, 96, 121-3, 177, 180. *See also* Mannheim school  
  
 East, 60  
 Egyptian music, 49  
 Eichendorff, 164, 174  
 Elgar, 201  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 59  
 English madrigalists, 58-61  
 Ephrem, St, 12  
 Equal temperament, 105  
 Erigena, *see* Johannes Scotus  
 Erlebach, 92  
 Estampido, 25  
 Este family, 67  
 Ett, 180  
 European War, 208  
 Expressionism, 205  
  
 Fantasia, 54, 81  
 Farmer, 60  
 Farnaby, 60  
 Fasch, 92, 113  
 Faux-bourdon, 22, 36  
 Ferdinand of Aragon, 37  
 Figured bass, *see* Basso continuo

INDEX

- Finck, 58  
 Fischer, 92, 105  
 Florence, 67-9  
 Florentine school, 68-9, 73, 76, 77-9, 110  
 Flotow, 174  
 Folk-song, 73-4, 150, 153, 164, 193-4, 196  
 Forster, 58  
 Förster, 92  
 Fouqué, 166  
 Fox-trot, 208  
 Francis of Assisi, St, 26  
 Franco, 24  
 French Revolution, 144  
 Frescobaldi, 86  
 Friedrich Wilhelm IV, 160  
 Frottola, 42, 44, 67  
 Fugue, 51, 54, 88, 94, 104, 105, 108, 118, 127, 148-50  
 Fulda, 37  
  
 Gabrieli, A., 52, 56  
 Gabrieli, G., 52, 56, 60, 84, 99, 102, 104  
 Gade, 199  
 Galilei, 68  
 Gastoldi, 62  
 Gavotte, 89  
 Gellert, 124  
 Gerhardt, 84  
 German Opera, *see* Opera  
 German song, 56-8, 61-4, 82-4, 124-5. *See also* Lied  
 Gesualdo da Venosa, 44  
 Gibbons, 60-1  
 Gigue, 89  
 Giovanni da Cascia, 32  
 Giovanni da Prato, 32  
 Giraldus Cambrensis, 19  
 Glinka, 194  
 Gluck, 64, 81, 89, 114-17, 118, 124, 132-4, 136, 140, 164, 167, 168-70  
 Goethe, 108, 124, 141, 144, 155-6, 158, 176, 177-80, 184  
 Goldoni, 136  
 Goudimel, 63  
 Gramophone, 202  
 Grandi, 99  
 Graun, 62  
 Great Schism, 11  
  
 Greek music, 7-10  
 Greek tragedy, *see* Drama  
 Gregorian chant, 11-19, 35. *See also* Chorale  
 Gregory, Pope, 12  
 Grétry, 140  
 Grieg, 201  
 Ground bass, *see* Ostinato  
 Guarini, 66  
 Guido d'Arezzo, 17-19  
 Gutenberg, 42  
 Gymel, 22  
  
 Hagedorn 124  
 Halévy, 170  
 Hammerschmidt, 100  
 Handel, 62, 75, 89, 98, 110-3, 130, 160, 193  
 Hanslick, 209  
 Harmony, 20, 33, 70, 85, 100, 105-6, 117, 150, 156, 177, 183, 194, 197-9, 203-7. *See also* Chromaticism, Modulation  
 Harpsichord, 54, 89, 94, 105, 108, 117, 123, 125, 176. *See also* Sonata, Suite  
 Hasse, 62, 75, 113  
 Hassler, 56, 62-4  
 Haydn, 121, 125-30, 142-3, 146, 148, 180, 193  
 Herder, 124  
 Hermann the Lame, 15, 17  
 Heterophony, 2  
 Hiller, 124, 140  
 Hilton, 59  
 Hindemith, 208, 209  
 Hoffmann, 162-3, 164-6, 173  
 Hofhaimer, 58  
 Hölty, 124  
 Holzbauer, 164  
 Homophony, 44, 58, 64, 104, 113, 118, 128, 132, 207  
 Hours, Offices of the, 11, 14  
 Huchald, 20  
 Hymns:  
     Evangelical, 63-4;  
     Greek, 7;  
     Gregorian, 11-14;  
     *See also* Chorale, Laudi  
  
 Impressionism, 203  
 Improvisation, 87, 92, 180

INDEX

- Instrumental music, 54-7, 76-7, 84-100, 104-8, 117-24, 125-30, 138, 142-4, 149, 158-60, 168-9, 194-5. *See also* Chamber music, Harpsichord, Organ, Sonata, Suite, Symphony, Viol, Viola da Gamba, Violin
- Intermezzo, 63-6, 135-6, 148
- Intrada, 90
- Isaak, 41, 58
- Italian Opera, *see* Opera
- Jacopo di Bologna, 32
- Jacopone da Todi, 15
- Janáček, 201
- Japanese music, 4
- Javanese music, 5
- Jazz, 208
- Jeu-parti, 25
- Jewish psalmody, 11
- Johannes Scotus, 19
- John of Bohemia, 30
- Jommelli, 75, 113
- Jongleur, 25-6
- Josquin, *see* Després
- Jubilus, 14
- Kant, 144
- Kaulbach, 180
- Keiser, 82
- Keyboard Instruments, *see* Clavichord, Harpsichord, Organ, Pianoforte, Sonata, Suite
- Kithara, 9
- Kreutzer, 173
- Krieger, 82
- Kusser, 82
- Lai, 25, 30
- Landino, 30, 32
- Lassus, 38, 44, 51-2
- Laudi, 26
- Legrenzi, 89
- Leit-motiv, 177, 188
- Léonin, 23
- 'L'homme armé', 36
- Lichfield, 60
- Lied, 52, 62, 73, 82-4, 124, 148, 154-8, 163-4, 180, 184, 194
- Liszt, 150, 175, 177-84, 187, 193, 197, 202
- Lobwasser, 63
- 'Locheimer Liederbuch', 41, 57
- Loewe, 125, 158
- Lortzing, 173-4
- Lotti, 75
- Lübeck, 102
- Ludwig, 24
- Lulli, 80, 90, 97
- Lur, 19
- Lute, 51, 54, 67, 89, 93, 176
- Luther, 63, 105
- Lyra, 67
- Machaut, 30-1
- Madrigal, 32, 42-52, 58-61, 67, 73, 77, 110
- Magnificat, 102, 106
- Mahler, 203, 207
- Mannheim school, 120-3, 127, 169, 180
- Marcenzio, 44, 60, 72
- Marschner, 173-4, 185-6
- Masquerade, 66
- Mass, 11, 14, 22, 30, 35-6, 38-42, 63, 68, 76, 106, 148-9, 160, 180-2
- Mattheson, 19
- Matthison, 155
- Maximilian I, 37, 41, 58
- Mayr, 168
- Mazarin, Cardinal, 80
- Medici family, 67
- Medici, Lorenzo de', 48
- Meistersinger, 28
- Melody, 1, 9, 17, 64-5, 93, 96, 100, 117, 123, 126-8, 132, 139, 152-4, 158, 170-2, 187, 195-9, 204-7
- Mendelssohn, 150-2, 158-62, 164, 194, 199
- Menuet, 89, 118
- Mercadante, 168
- Metastasio, 113-14, 116
- Meyerbeer, 162, 170, 186
- Minnesänger, 27
- Mocenigo, 35
- Modes:
  - Church, 15-17, 19, 57, 102
  - Greek, 9
- Modulation, 18, 88, 148, 156, 199
- Monk of Reading, 20
- Monk of Salzburg, 27
- Monody, *see* Instrumental music, Song
- Monsigny, 140
- Monteverdi, 39, 46, 72-3, 76-8, 82, 99
- Morley, 58-60

INDEX

- Motet, 24, 29-31, 35-6, 38-42, 44, 52, 68,  
75, 98-9, 102-5, 160
- Moussorgsky, 205
- Mozarabic chant, 13
- Mozart, L., 121
- Mozart, W. A., 41, 62, 75, 81, 109, 121, 128,  
130-44, 146, 148, 150, 152, 162, 164-8,  
180, 188, 193
- Muffat, 92
- Müller, 156
- Musical criticism, 162
- Musicology, 160
- Music-printing, 42
- Nardini, 113
- Nationalism, 172, 196-201
- Napolitan schools, 79, 113, 132, 134
- Neeffe, 124
- Neidhart von Reuenthal, 27
- Netherland schools, 20, 37-41, 48-9
- Neumes, 17
- Nicolai, 174
- Nielsen, 199
- Notation:  
Greek, 9-10  
Medieval, 17-18, 30
- Notker, 15
- Notre-Dame, 22
- Novalis, 156
- Obrecht, 37, 39, 43
- Ockeghem, 37, 38-9, 43
- Opera, 65-9, 72, 76-82, 113-17, 164-74,  
184-91, 199, 202-5;  
English, 81, 140;  
French, 80, 113-14, 116-17;  
German, 81-2, 117, 130-41, 148, 158,  
163-8, 184-92, 202;  
Italian, 65-9, 76-8, 109, 113-14, 118-20,  
134-7, 140, 148, 164, 168-73
- Oratorio, 68-9, 72, 99-100, 109-12, 125,  
130, 160, 164, 176, 180-2, 202
- Organ, 37, 54, 64, 102-3, 104-5, 108
- Organum, 20-4
- Oriental music, 5, 8
- Ornamentation, 3, 28, 32-3, 56, 64, 67-8,  
72, 84, 93, 113, 139, 169
- Orpheus, 7
- Ossian, 155
- Ostinato, 70, 87, 102
- Oswald von Wolkenstein, 28
- Overture, 139, 148, 179, 194;  
French, 90, 113;  
Venetian, 78, 97.  
*See also* Symphony
- Pachelbel, 102, 104
- Paganini, 183
- Palestrina, 51-2, 160, 180
- Papacy, 29, 32
- Partita, 94, 108
- Passacaglia, 105. *See also* Ostinato
- Passcpied, 89
- Passion, Settings of the, 39, 100, 106, 160
- Pastoral, 72
- Pastourelle, 25
- Paul, 163
- Paumann, 37
- Pergolesi, 118-20, 135, 140, 148, 209
- Peri, 68-9
- Pérotin, 23
- Perrin, 80
- Persian music, 5
- Petrarch, 31, 73
- Petrucchi, 42
- Petzel, 90
- Pfitzner, 202
- Philidor, 140
- Philippe de Vitry, 29-30
- Philippe le Beau, 42
- Philippe le Bon, 38
- Pianoforte, 142, 162-3, 180, 183, 195-7, 204.  
*See also* Chamber music, Sonata
- Piccinni, 136
- Pierre de la Croix, 30
- Pilkington, 60
- Plainsong, 11-19. *See also* Chorale
- Polymelody, 23
- Polyphony, 2, 19-24, 30-42, 64-5, 67-8, 70,  
81, 85-6, 93-4, 99, 103, 105, 108, 127-8,  
132, 207
- Polytonality, 205
- Popular music, 202
- Programme music, 7, 32, 49, 88, 163,  
176-80. *See also* Symphonic poem
- Prose, 14
- Proskc, 160
- Provenzale, 79

INDEX

- Ptolemæus, 9  
Puccini, 173  
Pugnani, 113  
Purcell, 81  
Puschmann, 28  
Pythagoras, 7, 9  
  
Quarter-tones, 205  
Quodlibet, 57, 62  
  
Rag-time, 208  
Rameau, 114, 117  
Recitative, 69, 73, 103, 105, 113, 116, 141, 167, 188  
Reformation, 63  
Reger, 203  
Reichardt, 125  
Reiche, 90  
Reichenau, 17  
Reincken, 108  
Religion, Music and, 1, 6, 11-15, 68, 75, 103-4, 105-6, 112, 180-3. *See also* Church music  
Renaissance, 43 *seq.*  
Requiem, 176, 182, 194  
Responsorial song, 11-12  
Rhaw, 64  
Rhythm, 1-2, 148, 177, 196-9, 203, 207.  
*See also* Dance  
Ricercar, 49-51, 54, 102  
Roman music:  
    Ancient, 9;  
    Medieval, 12-13;  
    Renaissance, 70, 73-4, 77-9, 134-5  
Romanticism, 150 *seq.*  
Rondeau:  
    Dance, 89;  
    Song, 25, 31  
Rondo, 118  
Rore, 44, 52  
Rospigliosi, 77-8  
Rossi, 74  
Rossini, 162, 168-72, 197  
Rousseau, 19, 113, 125, 140  
Russian music, 196, 199, 205  
  
Sachs, 28  
St Gall, 15, 25  
St Martial de Limoges, 25  
Sakadas, 7  
  
Sammartini, 118-9  
Sannazar, 73  
Sarabande, 89  
Savioni, 74  
Scales:  
    Greck, 9;  
    Medieval, 15-18;  
    Pentatonic, 4, 37;  
    Twelve-note, 205  
Scarlatti, A., 74-5, 79  
Scarlatti, D., 123  
Scheibe, 113  
Scheidt, 64, 102  
Schein, 98  
Schikaneder, 141  
Schiller, 141, 144, 149, 155-6, 187  
Schobert, 132  
Schönberg, 208-9  
Schopenhauer, 187-8  
Schubart, 125  
Schubert, 125, 150, 152-8, 162, 184, 194, 195, 201  
Schulz, 124  
Schumann, 150-2, 162-4, 183, 193, 194  
Schürmann, 82  
Schütz, 56, 62, 82, 100-2, 103, 193  
Schweitzer, 164  
Scriabin, 205  
Senfl, 58  
Sequence, 14, 15, 25  
Serenade, 123  
Shakespeare, 59, 81, 157, 176  
Shimmy, 208  
Sibelius, 201  
Sigismund, Archduke, 41  
Silcher, 152  
Simpson, 93  
Sirventes, 25, 27  
Smetana, 201  
Solmization, 17-18  
Sonata, 51, 56, 65, 81, 84-97, 117-20, 153-4, 160, 177;  
    Orchestral, 84, 95;  
    Solo, 92-7, 123, 125-30, 141, 145-6, 149, 197;  
    Sonata da camera, 89, 108;  
    Sonata da chiesa, 88-9;  
    Tower, 90;  
    Trio, 81, 86-9, 92

INDEX

- Song, Solo, I, 8, II, 14, 24-8, 64-82, 99, 136, 148, 150-2, 153-8, 164, 180, 193-4, 199. *See also* Aria, Folk-song, German song, Lied
- Spanish music, 26, 51, 173, 196
- Spohr, 166, 187
- Spontini, 117, 186
- Squarcialupi, 48
- 'Stabat Mater', 15
- Stamitz, 120
- Stolberg, 124
- Stoltzer, 58
- Stradella, 74
- Strauss, 202, 207
- Stravinsky, 202, 209
- String quartet, 125-30, 142, 146, 148-9, 153, 194, 208
- Suite, 54, 89-90, 105, 108, 118, 176
- 'Sumer is icumen in', 20
- Sweelinck, 56, 102
- Symphonic poem, 177-80, 202
- Symphony, 56, 78, 85, 90, 97-8, 104, 112, 113, 120-1, 123, 125-32, 143-4, 146, 148-9, 151-3, 164, 176-9, 185, 194-5, 199
- Syrian chant, 11, 14
- Tallis, 59
- Tango, 208
- Tartini, 89, 94, 97
- Tasso, 66, 73
- Tchaikovsky, 199
- Te Deum, 81, 176
- Telemann, 92
- Tensos, 25, 27
- Theocritus, 66, 73
- Theorists:  
     Greek, 9;  
     Roman, 9, 17;  
     Medieval, 20-22, 24, 27-8;  
     Renaissance, 69-70, 117
- Thibaut de Champagne, 26
- Thirty Years War, 99
- Thomas de Celano, 15
- Tintoris, 37
- Toccata, 49, 102, 108
- Tomkins, 60-1
- Tonality, 19, 27, 48, 205. *See also* Atonality, Modes, Scales, Polytonality
- Torelli, 97
- Traetta, 114
- Trent, Council of, 68
- 'Triumphs of Oriana, The', 59
- Trope, 13-15, 22-3, 25
- Troubadours, 24-5
- Trouvères, 24-6
- Tuotilo, 15
- Tye, 59
- Variations, 51, 86-7, 92-3, 102, 108, 118, 130, 142, 150, 154, 196
- Vecchi, 60-2
- Venetian schools, 52-6, 69-70, 73-6, 78-80, 84-5, 134
- Venice, 67, 69, 74, 78, 135-6
- Vcnvia, *see* Gesualdo
- Veracini, 94
- Verdi, 170-3, 182
- Vergil, 66
- Verists, 172-3
- Viadana, 70
- Viennese school, 123, 127, 154, 162. *See also* Beethoven, Haydn, Mozart, Schubert
- Villanella, 49, 52, 61, 110
- Viol, 20, 81
- Viola da gamba, 51, 67, 87, 93
- Violin, 20, 85, 87, 90, 92-8. *See also* Chamber music, Concerto, Sonata, String quartet
- Violoncello, 87, 108
- Viotti, 97
- Virelai, 31
- Virginal, 54
- Virtuosity, 54, 70, 84-6, 92, 94-6, 113, 142, 162-3, 170, 183, 197, 203
- Vitali, 89
- Vivaldi, 98
- Wackenroder, 150
- Wagner, 10, 150, 162, 167, 172, 184-95, 202
- Walther, J., 64
- Walther von der Vogelweide, 27
- Waltramus, 15
- Ward, 61
- Weber, 150-2, 166-8, 173, 183, 196
- Weelkes, 59-60
- Weisse, 140
- Werckmeister, 105
- White, 59-60
- Wieland, 164



INDEX

Wilbye, 59-60	Wolf, 194
Willaert, 44, 52	Zarlino, 52, 69
Wind instruments, 7-8, 19, 52, 84-5, 87, 89-90, 97, 120-1, 138, 142, 187	Zelter, 125
Wipo, 15	Zeno, 113
Wireless, 202	Zumsteeg, 125, 153



DATE OF ISSUE <sup>24</sup>

This book must be returned within 3,7,14 days of its issue. A fine of ONE ANNA per day will be charged if the book is overdue.

---

--	--	--	--	--	--

